This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES
3 3433 07437885 6

Palmerin of England,

IN FOUR VOLUMES.

CORRECTED BY

ROBERT SOUTHEY,

FROM THE ORIGINAL PORTUGUEZE.

Palmerin of England

by

Francisco de Moraes.

VOL. IV.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR LONGMAN, HURST, REES, AND C
PATERNOSTER ROW.

1807.

L/S

W. Pople, Printer,
22, Old Boswell Court, Strand.

CONTENTS.

VOL. IV.

Chap.		Page
126.	*Of what passed between Florendos and the vanquished knight, and how the knights whom he of the Damsels had conquered arrived at court, and of what happened there* -	1
127.	*Of what befel the knight of the Savage in the kingdom of Navarre, at the castle of the princess Arnalta*	19
128.	*How Albayzar presented himself before the queen of Thrace, and embarked for Turkey* - -	32
129.	*Of what happened to the knight of the Tyger on his way to Constantinople, after he left the Perilous Island* - - -	42

CONTENTS.

Chap.		Page
130.	*How the knight of the Tyger took leave of Armisia and the king her father, and of what he did upon the way* - - -	58
131.	*How the knight of the Tyger reached the emperor's court, and of an adventure which presented itself there*	70
132.	*Of the talk which Palmerin had with his lady* -	81
133.	*Relating the coming of certain knights to the court, and of the news of the fleet of the Turks*	94
148.*	*Of an adventure which befel the knight of the Savage before he arrived at Constantinople* -	103
149.	*How the knight of the Savage reached the court, and how Dragonalte king of Navarre arrived there with Arnalta* - - -	117

* Here the chapters spoken of in the Preface are omitted. These which follow are numbered as they stand in the original, for the convenience of reference.

CONTENTS.

ap.		Page
0.	*How at the emperor's desire Arnedos king of France, and Recindos king of Spain, came to court with their wives, and how Recindos brought with him Miraguarda and the giant Almourol* - -	128
51.	*Of the speech which the emperor made to all these princes, and how the marriages were appointed* -	137
52.	*How the soldan Belagriz turned Christian, and how the marriages were solemnized* - -	151
53.	*Of the feasts which were made in Constantinople, and how the queen of Thrace was carried away by a great adventure* - -	162
4.	*Of what happened to the knight of the Savage in the adventure of the queen of Thrace his wife* -	170
5.	*How with the help of Daliarte the knight of the Savage recovered the queen of Thrace* - -	189

Chap. Page

156. *Of what past in Constantinople, and how Targiana sent advice of the coming of the enemies* - 202

157. *Of what the emperor did for the defence of his land* - - 211

158. *How the enemies fleet arrived, and of the battle at their landing* - 221

159. *Of the grief which there was in Constantinople for the condition of Dramuziando, and how the enemies pitched their camp* - - 232

160. *Of what Albayzar did after his camp was pitched, and how succour came to the emperor* - - 246

161. *Of an adventure which befel upon the coming of a strange knight, who had a lady with him* - 253

162. *In which the manner of Florian's coming is related, and of other things which befel* - - 271

163. *Of the battle of twelve against twelve, and how the ladies put an end to it* - - 279

Chap. Page

164. *Of the battle between Dramuziando and Framustante* - - 292

165. *How the battle was ordered between the Turks and Christians* - 305

166. *How the first battle was fought, and of the great actions and misfortunes therein* - - 320

167. *Of what passed in the city after the first battle, and of the death of the emperor* - - - 346

168. *Of what was done before the second battle, and of the great things which took place in the city* - - 357

169. *Of what happened in the second battle* - - - 369

170. *How Daliarte came to the field to look for the dead that he might give them burial, and of the rest which he did* - - - 408

171. *Of the advice which Daliarte gave to the people, and how he carried the bodies to the Perilous Island, and of the wounded princes* - 416

Chap. Page

172. *Of the obsequies which were made in the island, and of what was appointed touching the education of the princes* - - 428

CHAPTER 126.

After the knight of the Damsels was departed, Florendos, being desirous to execute the charge left with him, asked of the vanquished knight who he was: Sir, he replied, we are both natives of this country. I am called Brandamor, and my companion had to name Sigerall. We two having long sought knightly adventures in company, concluded to make trial of this shield of Miraguarda, and before we saw the keeper, we did battle with that knight of the Damsels who is now gone his way, in which we were maltreated even as you behold. In truth, answered Florendos, the discourteous enterprize you took in hand, deserved greater chastisement than you have received, and such should always be the lot of those, who

put forth themselves in such actions. But now, as he has left appointed, you must promise that you will go and submit yourself in the court of king Recindos, or else endure more pain than your wounds give you. He, being still full of fear, promised to obey all that was enjoined him. And having bound up his wound as well as he could, he departed; tarrying no longer than was necessary to bury his companion.

In few days after, he arrived at the king of Spain's court, being very loth to enter in, because he was so well known to the king, and the chief of his household; but holding it a greater shame not to fulfil what he had promised, he entered the palace at such time as the king was in the queen's apartment. They who beheld him, did not repute him amongst the number of those vanquished by the knight of the Damsels, because his armour was fair and unbroken, nor blemished in any place; and his shield was no whit impaired, but the device thereof to be seen at pleasure, so that they looked at him the more, expecting some novelty. Brandamor seeing

himself there, where he had to avow his fault in the presence of his friends, thought it worse than death itself; nevertheless, as one who desired to have it over, he made way forwards, and coming to the queen's *estrado* knelt down, and taking off his helmet, presented himself as the knight of the Damsels had commanded; and though, as has been said, he was well known in that land, yet was he so disfigured by lack of blood which he had lost from that blow on the head, that none knew him: the queen having demanded of him who he was, asked for what occasion he enterprized to combat with the knight of the Damsels. He then told her of the death of his companion Sigerall, and how the knight that same day, before he vanquished them, had jousted with the keeper of the shield, and had likewise combated with the giant Almourol, and had brought him in great danger of his life.

Certes, quoth the king, this man is the most excellent in the world; the more I hear of his valour the more I am astonished. You, knight, if you had not for your excuse the

beauty of Miraguarda, which maketh men commit a thousand faults contrary to their condition, would deserve a punishment equal to that of your companion, and it would become me to see it executed; for I must not consent that such robberies be committed within my realm. Brandamor at this went to kiss his hand for the mercy which he had found: and when he drew nearer the king knew him, which made him marvel the more, for he was held to be a good knight: so he commanded his chirurgeons should use good respect unto him, being sorry to behold him in such plight. Three days afterwards the two knights that would have ravished Silviana arrived at the court, being so feeble and weak, as they were constrained to lean on their squires' shoulders: he that had the least hurt, having made obeisance to the king and queen, addressed himself to the king without kneeling, which he could not do for weakness, and said, Most mighty prince, we having been conquered by the knight of the Damsels, are come hither by his command, to present ourselves to the ladies of this court, whom we intreat

so to work on our behalf with your majesty, that we may not be judged as the offence deserves for which we are sent here. And then he related the cause of the battle. Certes, cried the king, well might God chastise me for not chastising those who deserve it so well; I being his minister in the land, ought not to suffer such things. And if I did not think that your being sent here by the knight of the Damsels obliges me to inflict no farther punishment upon ye than ye bring with ye, the villainy which ye offered to a weak damsel, who was travelling without fear in my dominions, should be punished as the crime deserves. The more I hear of this knight the more I am indebted to him; for what I by my negligence do not attend to, he goes about punishing, and amending by his prowess. I know not why he will not let himself be known, that we might requite some part of his deserts;—to recompence all would be impossible. Your highness, replied the knight, hath reason thus to esteem of him, for never was there such valour in man as there is in him: and now that our fault is forgiven, we beseech you that the ladies

may suffer my companion and me to bear arms, which we must not do till they permit us. They will do as they think best, replied the king; ask nothing from me. The knights seeing the king's displeasure, then besought the queen to favour them, and command her ladies to entertain them into their favourable judgments: promising from thenceforth to employ their time and strength in their services and in that of all damsels.

Before the queen could answer him, another knight of no less stature and goodly appearance entered the hall, and kneeling before her, presented himself to the ladies on the part of the knight of the Damsels; for this was he who would have carried away Arlanza while he was busied in battle with the other two. And he related all the manner of his adventure, and how the knight had taken his horse in place of that which he had killed, and made him take this journey on foot, for the little way which he had been by him constrained to run after him: and as he was not to bear arms without leave granted by the ladies of that court, he be-

sought her highness to favour him. Methinks, said the queen, that while the knight of the Damsels continues in this land, we shall always hear of great things; and the ladies cannot now chuse but be greatly beholden unto him. This favour which you ask of me hath just been requested also by these other knights, who have been sent hither upon like occasion. I know not what else to do, lest I should constrain their pleasure, but commit you all three to their discretions, to whom you are sent. The knight no sooner beheld the other two, but he presently knew them to be they whom he of the Damsels had conquered the same day; and then he thought less of his own overthrow, for the one of them was Ferabroca, the other Grutafora, and both were of the race of the giants, and not accustomed to be vanquished. The king knew not what to say, seeing such great atchievements, which he held to be far different from the deeds of other men; and much more did he think so when he learnt the names of the knights, and that the third was Rocamor, who was greatly accounted of in that court. The ladies being commanded

by the queen to determine concerning them as they thought good, agreed to restore them from their fall, and grant them leave to bear arms, on condition that they never employed them to the hurt of dame or damsel, nor ever refused gift or service which should by dame or damsel be demanded of them, whether it were just or unjust. A hard condition did this appear to all, and difficult to fulfil. The king would have had them remit it; but as it is their nature to be unreasonable in every thing, they would not be persuaded, and as women must have their way, they were forced to accept the terms; which done, they departed.

Some days past before any thing to be spoken of happened in the court. At length one Sunday, after vespers, the king being with the queen and her ladies in a varanda of her apartment which was over the place before the palace, there came into the place three goodly and gallant knights, armed in rich arms, who made their obeisance as they past under the varandas, and then taking their post in another part of the place, rested

the hilts of their spears upon the ground, and leant upon them, while one of their squires went with a message to the king. All deemed that this would prove to be some new adventure, and waited to hear what the biddingwould be. The squire being come before the queen, he humbled himself on his knees before her, saying, Lady, these three strange knights commanded me to let your highness understand, that they have travelled a long time in the service of the three daughters of duke Calistrao of Arragon, who were judged fair in their eyes; albeit they were found false in their love. For they, after they had long time entertained these knights as chief of their affections, were married unto three others, who were brought up in their father's court, and unworthy of them in every respect; nevertheless are they satisfied with the exchange, as many are wont to be at first with their error, not considering the offence they have committed, in being so forgetful of their own honour, as to marry with such as beseemed not their degrees; the appetite which guided them, having blinded all judgment. These three knights are so highly offended

hereat, as they have concluded never espouse any other damsels, but only such, being weary of their own servants, w vouchsafe to admit them entertainment. B if any such as are forsaken of their ladi shall alledge that this change is not equ they will justify the fitness thereof again them by combat.

And because these ladies may favour the in their demands, without any prejudice their renown, I will declare to you the e tates of these knights. The first is name Lustramar, the eldest son to the marqu Astramor. The second is called Arpian, he to the dutchy of Archeste. The third Gradiante, the count of Artasia. Now lad with leave of your highness, the ladies ma shew their liking; what they request is, tha there may be no impediment to this, an here will they abide all this day, in the sam manner as you see, to make proof of arm against the servants of those who shall b willing to accept them.

But if it so fall out, that they find the ladie

of this court more desirous to keep their old servants than to entertain these newly come, they will be content to depart hence, even as they came hither, and visit other courts, to try if fortune will be so favourable to them, as to knit up their earnest desires to their contentment.

A new manner of adventure did this appear to the king; and though it were of a nature worthy of mirth, yet were there some gallants in the court whom it put in fear, not trusting so much in the constancy of those whom they served as to think themselves secure, especially seeing the knights were of such rank. Moreover, he who knows what women are, should never rely so much upon their show of love, as to think that they may not, even when it is greatest, change, according to their natural condition. Well would this truth have been seen in that court, if shame had not imposed some little constraint; for there were some dames there who would lightly have forsaken servants of long standing, to have married either of the three companions. The knights having

received reply from the king and queen, that they gave leave to the ladies to use their pleasure, and to their rejected or cast-off servants to do battle thereupon, waited great part of the day, without any one accepting the offer. Just as the sun was setting, the knight of the Damsels arrived, his arms battered and broken, and the colour of his shield effaced, upon a large and goodly horse. Great was the stir and expectation which his coming occasioned, and he was presently given to understand the cause which had brought these three adventurers there: whereat his damsels were much moved, and well pleased withal; for being weary of him, or of seeing that he was so of them, they thought to exchange for these knights. Now ladies, said he, you have an opportunity of showing the love you bear me, and I of seeing what I have gained by my long services; for these knights seek discontented ladies, with whom they will content themselves. I, cried Artisia, have been so undeceived by your company, that if the knights seek for one who is willing to change old thoughts for new love, here am I who

will make the exchange. And we are of the same mind, said they whom he had won from the knights in the forest; upon this, they sent to the three knights, and willed them to come and deliver them out of his hands, who would compel them to stay in his company. The knights upon this placed themselves in order to joust, not with any intent to marry them, if they should conquer, for their demand was not to that end. Methinks, said the king to the queen, these knights have hit upon a bad time for their enterprize, for he of the Damsels will not part with them without their full price.

Artisia and her companions forsook the other company of Arlanza, and put themselves apart from them, that it might be seen the contest was on their account. The ladies of the court could not chuse but marvel thereat, knowing well the prowess of the knight that had conducted them: some judged the occasion to be the damsels' desire, that they might be at their own liberty: others reputed the cause to some dislike which they resented, and which made them abhor him:

but the main reason was, that they always want what is new, and any thing which they are long used to tires them.

Gradiante seeing the day waste apace, advanced himself forth first, making show of the joust. He of the Damsels, who as little wished for any delay, laid heels to his horse, and ran at him, and encountered him in such sort, that he bore him out of his saddle, clean over the crupper. Then turning to Artisia, he said, For this time, lady mine, you must be at my disposal. Then he received another lance, that one of the king's pages brought him, the king having some always ready for such occasions, and with it he unhorsed Arpian in like manner, himself remaining as firm in his seat as if he had not been touched; whereat the three companions were full discontent, for they had not been wont to be so lightly vanquished. Lustraman, who was the best among them, a soon as he saw him ready ran at him, full c anger and melancholy; and though from tl strength of this knight he of the Dams received some hurt, for besides having

arms pierced and receiving a slight wound he lost a stirrup, he did not the less send him to the ground also.

This victory, though it was no little one, did not seem of great account in the court, by reason of the great fame of him who had atchieved it. The three companions would have done battle with the sword, and chiefly Lustramar did seem most desirous of it: but he of the Damsels excused himself, seeing the day departing so speedily, and the dark night ready to overtake them; yet would not Lustramar be content with his excuse, but still persisted.

I pray you, sir Knight, said Polifema, chuse the least evil, and be content with what you have received, for our keeper is so accustomed never to be conquered, that none can receive any dishonour in being conquered by him. I have found so small assurance answered Lustramar, in women's words, as for your counsel I will not forbear to follow my enterprize. Nevertheless, said Artisia, I advise you by all means not to reject it. But

at this time the king came down, for the desire he had to know the knight of the Damsels would not let him rest; and by his authority preventing the battle, he took them all in, for the others also were worthy of that honour. He of the Damsels entered the palace accompanied by his whole bevy, and leading Arlanza by the hand; for on all public occasions he treated her with the most deference. And coming before the queen he knelt down, and took his helmet off to kiss her hand. But so soon as he had discovered his face the king knew him and took him in his arms, saying, You need think nothing now, lady, of all which you have heard of this knight's prowess, for he is wont to atchieve greater things. This is Florian of the Desert, the knight of the Savage Man, son of Don Duardos and the Lady Flerida your friend. The queen hearing these words, rose, and embracing him graciously, charged him with his discourtesy, when he passed by the court and would not suffer himself to be known.

Lustramar and his companions, knowing that

hewhich had vanquished them was the knight of the Savage Man, of whose exploits the world was full, they made no account of the foil they had received; but on the morning when they departed thence, they desired that he would rank them in the list of his friends, saying that they should think their mishap fortunate in procuring them that name. He of the Damsels requited them with equal courtesy, and advised them by all means, for their own sakes, to pursue their present enterprize no farther, and not to think much of the wrong their ladies had done them, for love in them is never so firm but that any thing may shake it.

The knight of the Damsels would then fain have departed also, but the queen perforce detained him for some days, for she rejoiced greatly to see him in her house, as well for his great prowess and for his friendship with her sons Beroldo and Onistaldo, as because he was the son of Flerida, with whom she had been bred up. After ten days he took his leave of the king and queen, leaving Silviana there in the court, where she was well known,

as also Artisia and her companions, who would keep him company no longer: nevertheless, the remembrance of what had happened occasioned them some regret, which made them bid him the farewell with tears. The queen bestowed marks of favour upon Arlanza, and gave her things of great price, when the knight took his leave; for her and her damsels he took with him, in the intent which ye have heard. The king accompanied him good way out of the city, and then commending his sons to him, and beseeching him to kiss the emperor's hand in his name, and remember him to all his friends, he returned to his palace, where every thing now seemed solitary, after the great pleasure they had of late enjoyed; but now it was as if some misfortune had happened. Thus always it is when any one departs, especially those to whom we are bound by reason and friendship.

CHAPTER 127.

of the Savage, before he departed from
king of Spain's court, ordered new arms
ie made, with his old device of the
ge Man, because he had greater de-
t therein than in any other. In this
ner he travelled atchieving many adven-
s, which I let pass, because they were
of such importance as to be placed
ng his other knightly deeds. It was his
ne at length to arrive in a pleasant val-
even there where the castle of Arnalta
d. It so chanced, that Arnalta had at
time ridden abroad with her merlins, and
then beholding a combat in which Dra-
alte, the son of duke Drapos, conquered
night, who would not concede to what
s the keeper of the valley required, that
alta was the fairest lady on the earth,

and the most worthy to be served. His arms were striped in bars with grey and gold, and he bare in his shield the same device which Miraguarda had enjoined him, when he came with the princess to the castle of Almourol, and lost the honour of the day. Arnalta was now losing the anger which she resented at his foil, when her beauty was the quarrel: for though in women dislike be more durable than love, yet as she saw him persevere so long in her service, being moreover a young and comely gallant, her inclination changed, and she in the end began to favour his courteous deeds with more regard than she had done before. And now seeing him of the Savage coming with Arlanza and her damsels, Arnalta knew by the device upon his shield, that this was he who had deceived her, and on whom she desired to be revenged; and she had pity on the damsels in his company, thinking that they accompanied him against their will, some envy being mingled with that compassion, for she also thought that peradventure there might be one among them who was happy enough to have him

for her servant. So turning to Dragonalte she said, Behold, here comes the man in the world who hath done me the most wrong, and of whom I most desire to be revenged now: therefore, I desire to see the utmost of your redoubted behaviour. And if you pass happily through this danger, it shall be the last you shall enterprize for me, the crown of all, and the commencement of your repose: for I will not fail to recompence you to your full contentment. So great a promise, replied he, ought to be of such power, that the victory, should I win it, must be ascribed to that and not to my own strength. I have never failed to conquer, except when your favour failed me; and now having that in this great bounty, what excuse would there be if I should fail in atchieving even what is impossible? In truth, I should think it sufficient revenge upon whom I wished great evil, to see him so burthened with women; but as this does not satisfy you, I will sword in hand do your pleasure, at the cost of his blood.

While these words passed, he of the Savage

drew nigh. Sir Knight, said Dragonalte in a loud voice, according to the custom of this valley, you must either make trial of my might, and be at the disposal of this lady princess, or you must confess that she is the fairest lady in the world, and the most worthy to be served; and moreover, laying aside your arms, you must yield yourself to her, that she may receive satisfaction for a wrong or disservice which you have wrought her: and that you may not in all things receive displeasure, she will admit these damsels into her service; you, I ween, will part with them with a good will, to rid yourself of so great a load.

If she so greatly desires their service, replied he of the Savage, ill have you done in not seeking me sooner, when I had as many more, and the service would have been doubled. Howbeit, neither shall these serve her, nor will I confess what you demand, which would be to confess a lie. I am myself the servant of such a lady, as she may no way equal in beauty, and that I shall make you confess before I depart.

ccasioned great melancholy in Dra-
, and gave Arnalta great displeasure:
was full vain, and could not brook to
ıother praised. Dragonalte having
lance and righted himself in the sad-
ked at Arnalta, that she might favour
he encounter, and broached his horse
the knight, who likewise prepared
to the joust: they encountered toge-
antly; Dragonalte pierced the other's
nd brake his lance upon his armour,
him bend something back upon the
but he himself was cast forth of his
Upon this the other dismounted, and
attle began as had not for many a day
n there, for Dragonalte was a right
ight, and worthy to be ranked among
hy ones of those times. And remem-
ıe earnestness with which his lady
ed him to revenge her upon this
and that by the issue of this battle
d either obtain the guerdon of all
ırs, and become king of Navarre, or
and life withall, he did wonders;
any time had he displayed such
but what did it avail; for he of the

Savage baffled all this prowess. Long did their strife endure, before any vantage could be perceived in either; but at length, Dragonalte's strength began to fail, for he was badly wounded. He of the Savage, unwilling to pursue it to the end, for he knew who he was, drew back to let him take breath, and while he rested besought him to give over the battle, and continue to keep the pass, for he would proceed upon his journey. I know, replied Dragonalte, that these terms would not be bad ones for me, if life were the thing which I most regarded; but inasmuch as that is what I least think of, let it go, and the battle be renewed, for I wish not to preserve that, when other hopes are lost. Then turning again to the combat, after short while, despairing to conquer so mighty an enemy, his strength and spirit failed him for loss of blood, and he fell senseless at his enemy's feet.

Cruel as Arnalta was she could not forbear coming to help him, seeing him in such plight, for the knight of the Savage took off his helmet, and made shew as if he would

cut off his head; and coming up to him she said, I beseech you, sir Knight, in atonement for some wrong, if you have done me any, do not take his life; victory is sufficient for an honourable mind, all beyond is cruelty. How that may be I know not, replied he of the Savage, but this I know, that I will not hold my hands, without he recant his former words, or you promise me a gift that I shall demand. Ill be your fortune, cried Arnalta, who, not content with conquering, require a pledge for sparing him. Leave him then, for I promise the boon, provided it be no dishonour to me. Now then, said he, give order that his wounds be looked to; I will then tell you what I require. Then Arnalta's damsels disarmed Dragonalte, who coming to himself, so abhorred his life, that he refused all remedy for it, uttering words which it was piteous to hear; for love makes brave men betray weakness in cases wherein he seems to forsake them. They conveyed him into the castle, and drest his hurts with great care; but the worst pain which he felt, and the hurt which most afflicted him, was to think that he had now

utterly lost all hope of winning his lady; an for this cause he loathed life.

Arnalta ordered the knight of the Savage t be lodged out of the castle, in an apartmen which she was wont to allot to those person whom she wished to show little courtesy tc and she now despaired ever to have th vengeance upon him which she wishec After three days, Dragonalte being some thing recovered, she wished to dismiss hir of the Savage, her heart not enduring to se him in her house who had done her suc wrong, and whom she so greatly hated. An going to visit Dragonalte, as she was some times wont to do, she found him there; an with language beseeming her person, sh besought him to say now what it was tha he was minded to require of her. Lady, h replied, you are so fair, that were you not s melancholick also, your servants could by n one be overcome, nor is there any one in th world who would deny what they affirm. am so sensible of this truth, that if I ha not been commanded to acknowledge it b force, I should have done so by my own fre

l. Yet I have been in the court of Eng-
d where there are fair ladies, and in that
Spain as well. I have seen Florenda,
ghter of Arnedos king of France, who is
)lled by many, and above all the court of
emperor Palmerin, wherein all beauty is
tained. I know Gridonia and Flerida,
)se charms are still unfaded; the princess
inarda, the queen of Thrace, Sidela,
ghter of the king Tarnaes of Lacedemonia,
many others, the fame of whom fills the
ld. I have also seen Targiana, the daugh-
of the Great Turk, for whom Albayzar the
lan of Babylon doth such wonders: in
judgment all these might confess some
tage in you, and so they speak of you
) speak without affection. But you are
o rigorous a condition, so cruel and hard
)e satisfied, that it doth something abate
worth of your beauty.

s (let it not offend you that I speak
nly,) you cannot deny yourself, making
ight account as you do of sir Dragonalte
e, not remembering that being such a per-
as he is, so great a prince, so singular a

knight, and of the consort of the most famou
and best of these times; he forsakes thei
company, conversation, and friendship, t
serve you, offering himself to so many danger
to do your pleasure. Now, therefore, be
cause it is not fitting that beauty so excellen
should be accompanied by such different qua
lities, the boon which I have required of yo
is, that in recompence of his noble desert
you accept him as your husband: so sha
you both fulfil your promise to me, and ac
complish the commandment which the kin
your father charged you should fulfil: mar
rying conformably to your rank and person
and with one who by his love deserves you
a thing which ought to be esteemed abov
all others. I now expect your answer, t
see what assurance may be built upon you
word. Sir knight, said Arnalta, tell me
beseech you first, who you are, for I woul
be resolved of that, before I determine wha
you require.

The knowledge of me, fair lady, said th
knight of the Savage Man, shall be no hin
drance to the matter; I am called Florian c

the Desert, son to Don Duardos, the English prince, and Flerida daughter to the emperor Palmerin. Hearing these words, Certes, cried Dragonalte, if in the victory you have obtained I should lose nothing else but reputation, I could not be any jot offended, being vanquished at his hands who always returneth from the combat conqueror: but seeing I risk the hope that should yield me content, and that I cannot complain of having been conquered, seeing who hath been the conqueror, I must complain of fortune if in the rest she should prove contrary to me.

Arnalta hung her head a little when she heard his name, remembering what had passed, and full willingly, notwithstanding the hatred which she resented towards him, would she have been to match with him in marriage; but knowing well that he would not accept her, and being moreover full of vanity at the praises which he had bestowed upon her, for she fancied they were sincere, she determined to content herself with his request. Then looking up with a show of cheerful-

ness, I did not think, sir knight, said she that he which could so nobly vanquish men could be content to deceive women. The feats which I have beheld of sir Dragonalt are such, as beside my promise unto you win me to assent: but it is upon this con dition, that within a year, he shall bring m to the court of the emperor Palmerin, for desire to see the greatness thereof, and to re main in the conversation and friendship o those ladies which you have named.

This condition, said the knight of the Savag Man, is what I ought to have requested; fc the emperor I know will hold his court hc noured by your presence. Let your highne give me your hand, that I may kiss it for th favour thus bestowed upon me; but she en braced him courteously, and Dragonalt would have humbled himself at his feet, thinl ing now that his defeature had been a ble sing sent from heaven, when it was thus r quited: and he now felt his wounds the les for they were drest by the hands of Arnalt Three days afterwards the governors of th realm were convened, and they knowing h

intention, and also the prowess and good qualities of Dragonalte, approved the marriage as good, and convenient to the state and authority of their lady. It was solemnized in the same castle, for he of the Savage being desirous to pursue his journey, would not wait the time which the governors requested for the preparation of suitable feasts: so it was effected then with all the solemnity which the place would permit. The knight of the Savage then took his leave, leaving Dragonalte in full contentment, and the queen satisfied with his promise to carry her to the emperor's court. The history now ceases to speak of them and returns to Albayzar, whose deeds it is well to record, because they were not such as deserve oblivion.

CHAPTER 128.

Albayzar, soldan of Babylon, three days after the joust between him and the knight of the Savage Man, taking his farewell of the king, the queen, the ladies, and those knights of the court who were his friends, set forward on his way, accompanied with two squires, making such speed both by sea and land, that in forty days time he attained to the city of Constantinople. And being, as ye have heard, of a proud and haughty nature, neither offering show of courtesy to any one, nor seeming from any one to wish it, he entered the chamber of presence, where he found the emperor, the empress and her ladies, beside the chief princes and knights of the court: and placing his

eye upon the princesses and ladies who were there present, he presently judged which was the queen of Thrace, whereof he was certified by noting that her place was equal with Polinarda's. Then forcing somewhat his condition, he presented himself before her on one knee, saying, Lady, when I was about to depart from the king of Spain's court, a knight arrived there, accompanied with nine damsels; and he trying the jousts with the chiefs of that country, unhorsed them all. He and I defied each other, and having broken some lances without vantage on either part, I was at last conquered. He then commanded me to submit myself before you, for the condition was so made. And he bade me say it grieves him that this, which is the first exploit he hath atchieved in your name, is not of such account as he would wish it. I have fulfilled this: now then, lady, see what you will ordain concerning me. Albayzar being well known in the court, great the stir was on all sides for his arrival, and the emperor himself was well pleased, having dreaded lest any misadventure should befal him, which he would not for any price should be,

so greatly did he desire to requite Targia for what he was beholden to her.

The queen of Thrace, who was little accu tomed to such things, and was moreov somewhat abashed at seeing so great a prin before her, and one whose presence seem so much to rejoice the emperor, remain awhile without answering him; and th taking his hand she made him rise, sayin What I would have is, that you should do it shall please the emperor to command yo which I judge shall be nothing hurtful, s ing the great desire he hath to rejoice t princess Targiana with your presence.

This determination Albayzar regarded as favour, and then having saluted the empr and Gridonia, he came to the emperor, w took him in his arms, and said, With h much better a will, sir Albayzar, would s dan Olorique, your father, have received r embrace! Nevertheless, I am satisfied w thinking that I fulfil my old friendship wi him, and the love which I bear to the la Targiana; this house is hers;—I am griev

that you will not think it yours also, for as the son of your father, and the husband of Targiana, I would fain hold you in the like account.

Sir, replied Albayzar, every thing might be expected, and every thing believed of your person, nor am I of so simple understanding but I can well perceive what great honour you have always afforded me; but yet I cannot forget the shame I received here in your court, when I was vanquished, and above all, that here I saw the princess Targiana, who had been stolen by your grandson, the knight of the Savage; and this being a thing so worthy of chastisement, your reason availed nothing, nor the representations offered by the Turk, requiring you to do him justice yourself, or to deliver him up, that it might be done in his court: instead of this, you have denied him that right which you are wont to observe toward all, not merely withholding what he requires, but also hearing his embassies with scorn, love and kindred availing with you more than reason and justice; which is a fault

deserving of greater reprehension in princes, than in any other persons.

I well know, replied the emperor, that when the will is warped, reason and excuses avail little in setting it right; though what you say might well be answered, it being clear and manifest that the lady Targiana came hither on her own good will, and not enforced thereto. But not to weary you with reasons to which you will not listen, let us leave the matter. Take now your rest, and appoint your departure when it pleases, since the galleys of the Turk await you. Albayzar replied, I take the time now to be so commodious, that it will be best not to lose so good an opportunity. Even as please you, said the emperor, let your pleasure be done in every thing.

The ambassador, who was awaiting him and had been present at all this, after going through his ceremonies and courtesies toward Albayzar, after the manner of the Turks, told him that he might embark that same hour, for the galleys were ready, the

ea in good case, and the wind well for their oyage. Albayzar having license of the emeror and empress, took leave of the rest, nd departed as he came, accompanied by is squires, the ambassador of the Turk folwing him with his train. With the ambasador, to do him honour, went king Poleidos, elcar, and some others who had been priners and were his friends. Primaleon lso, at the emperor's command, forcing his nclination, which was never to show courtesy where it was so ill received, accomanied him till he had embarked. Dramuiando went with him, he happening at that ime to be in the court, and seeing how drily nd haughtily Albayzar took leave of Primaeon, could not dissemble at such unreasonble demeanour. Certes, Albayzar, quoth e, any courtesy is ill bestowed upon you, who receive it like one who understands it not! It is the emperor's fault; he will demean himself according to his own nature towards those who deserve it not, and so his people are treated with contempt. It is plain, answered Albayzar, that nothing in me can please you! for that I care little, for though

your friendship fail me, I may find others which will excuse it. But that you may not judge of my actions contrary to their intent, this I tell thee, that a noble mind disdaineth familiarity to them whom he accounteth for his enemies. I am an enemy to all this house; and having so proclaimed myself, having avowed hatred, and feeling hatred in my heart, what reason is there that I should make other semblance? Let them do so who have no confidence in themselves. Brave men use no disguise; and hence it is that I do not use such ceremony towards Sir Primaleon as his rank requires, and his person deserves. If this does not seem good to you, let it seem as ill as you like! and if I live, I will ere long show you in deeds before these walls, what you now discover in my will.

Dramuziando answered, This I can tell you, that that time seems long to one of my condition, for I want to find opportunity of taking satisfaction for the shield of Miraguarda, which you stole from me; and which I shall ever resent till I revenge

myself, not being contented that another should revenge the wrong which was done unto me.

Albayzar was about to make him answer, but Primaleon, who was by nature harsh in language, lest he should now give way to his inclination, departed, taking Dramuziando with him, and with the other knights returned to the palace. There, when they related what had passed, it pleased all but the emperor, who always desired that his enemies should be entirely to blame; but it plainly appeared to him, and to all his court, that the deep hatred which Albayzar always avowed would seek how to be satisfied.

The Turkish gallies having cleared the port, hoisted sail, and having wind at will, came in few days to the harbour, where the Great Turk expected them. And as it is natural to be always apprehensive in things which are greatly desired, and to rejoice the more when they are attained, so was it upon Albayzar's arrival; for the Turk bearing in mind the base treason which he had used towards

the knights of the emperor, when they brought him back his daughter, feared that now he had released them, the like would be done to Albayzar; but seeing him now return, his joy was doubled. He went out with all his train to meet him at his landing, with such love as if he had been his father; and he would not let any embassy on the part of the emperor be delivered unto him; this did he that they might not speak of his greatness and virtue, nor of the good entertainment which they had received; for the more these were praised, the worse did the offence appear which he had committed against Polendos and his companions.

Albayzar remained a certain time in the Great Turk's court, attending the coming of the principal estates of Babylon, whom he would have there present at the second solemnizing of his marriage, which was celebrated with greater feasts and rarer inventions than had ever been seen in that country. There were present the soldan of Persia, the king of Bythinia, the king of Caspia, the king of Trebisond, and many other princes

and knights. From whose meeting it came to pass, that when the feasts were over, they consulted upon the destruction of Constantinople, each swearing that at an appointed time, he would come with all his own power, and all that of his allies and kinsmen. This great enterprize being thus determined upon they all returned into their own kingdoms and we shall speak of them in due time.

CHAPTER 129.

The knight of the Tyger, of whom our history hath been silent a long time, entered the foist with Argentao, the governor of the Profound Isle, at what time the wind was so contrary, as he was fain to take landing in that same isle, where he sojourned few days, the long desire he had to reach Constantinople making him imagine the time too tedious till he came thither. As soon as the weather permitted he departed thence in a galley, accompanied with only Selviam, being in a new armour which he caused to be made in the Profound Isle, but keeping his device of the Golden Tyger, which was renowned through all countries in Christendom. In short time he came to the coast of Scotland, where his *m nd* served him well to go on shore.

On the third day, at evening, he came into a goodly valley, along the midst whereof ran a great river, so deep that it could in few places be forded. He had not proceeded far along its banks, before he saw a dwelling of noble appearance and newly edified, on the same side of the river; and before it was a bridge, the which was kept by a knight in armour of red and green with borders of gold, who bare in his shield a White Bull, in a field sable; by which device he knew that it was his brother Pompides. He rode upon a large iron-grey horse, and being a man of great stature and one who became his arms, so did the adornments of his person make him appear goodlier.

On the other side the bridge was another knight, who seemed of not less estimation than he of the Bull, for in person he was nothing behind him, and in bravery of arms had something the vantage. And because no one might pass the bridge without he did first combat with him that defended it, or yield himself to Armisia the king of Scots' daughter, to whom the house belonged; this

strange knight was attending when he of the Bull should be ready, that he might win the passage by force; for as for submitting to the other condition, that would he not do for any force, as well knowing that Armisia had established this custom only for his sake, none such having existed in old time, and that bridge being the main place of passage in all the realm. The bridge was so large as four knights might easily combat thereon, and it was so well fenced on either side, that horses entered upon it without fear.

He of the Tyger staid awhile, to see the end of the combat between these knights, and viewing well the knight of the Bull, who had lifted up the beaver of his helmet to speak to a damsel which stood looking forth at a window, he was then assured that it was his brother Pompides: the talk which he held with her was short, and so low that it could not be heard. He of the Bull then closed his beaver, and entered upon the bridge, lance in hand. Methinks, cried the other in a loud voice, you would have all the day past in ceremonies! for having kept me a good

while waiting before you came, you have now tarried in amorous talk, or in making offers at another's cost. If I have made such, replied he of the Bull, I shall fulfil them, as I have been long accustomed to do. Now, quoth the other, I pride myself upon breaking customs, so look to yourself!

Without more words they ran together, and encountered in the middle of the bridge with all their might; their spears brake, and they met body to body with such a shock, that both fell to the ground, being well nigh astound. Both rose as well as they could, and grasping their shields began, sword in hand, so terrible and fierce a battle, that the like had never before been seen at that pass: for though he of the Bull had now kept the bridge two months at Armisia's request, and in that time had performed many feats, answerable to his person, and had conquered some famous knights, yet none had ever come who was equal with this in hardihood, and strength, and skill. He of the Tyger thought it one of the best fought battles he had ever witnessed, and feared lest Pompides should be over-

come ; but at length, when both wei
handled, and their armour well nig
lished, he could perceive that the c
the weaker. Both at last, being
longer to continue in such strife, dre
the strange knight sate himself do
one of the benches of the bridge, a
the Bull leant against the side.
knight, said he, I perceive that i
made any promises, I am able to
them ; but by what I see of your
would fain that it should be rese
other occasions, and not come to
here. You, in yielding yourself
hands of the lady Armisia would lose
since you see that others who have
have received no hurt. To go on
battle is what cannot be done with
risk : and inasmuch as none sh
himself in danger, save only in cases
his honour would else suffer impe
my advice is that you should do
Sir knight, replied the other, what
loss might result to me from doing
advise, I know better than you ; l
new our battle, that and fortune will

I am prepared for any thing. And without waiting answer, he made at the knight of the Bull.

But though in this second struggle the strange knight put forth all his strength, and did wonders; not being able to withstand such blows as were dealt him, he fell upon the ground, overwearied and well nigh dead. He of the Bull took off his helmet, saying, Since you would not take my advice when you might have done it with less danger, you must now yield yourself perforce to the lady Armisia, or I must cut off your head. Certes, sir knight, replied the stranger, I know not which be the worst danger; but that it may be said, I rather chose to die than to yield myself to her who desires to be revenged on me, do what you please; I will rather yield to you, than to one whom nothing can satisfy. He of the Bull seeing him so obstinate, and not knowing the cause, asked him to tell his name. Neither will I tell you that, he replied, for if I have any hope of life, it is that the conqueror may not know whom he has conquered. He of the

Bull being well inclined, held his hand, and sent by his squire to tell Armisia what had past between them, beseeching her to think it good to give the knight his life, seeing there was no reason why he should lose it. And Armisia being also of a merciful nature where she resented no hatred, commanded one of her damsels to tell him that he should learn who the knight was, and let him go.

The damsel coming to them, and setting eyes upon the vanquished, knew him to be Adraspe, son to the duke of Sisania, who had slain prince Doriel, brother to her lady, for the revenge of whose death, the guarding of that passage was first ordained. Upon this she began to cry aloud and tear her hair, and lament the death of Doriel. The princess Armisia understood what it was; and as all her sex have little moderation in taking revenge and satisfying their wills, she came down immediately, with her women waiting on her, both she and they weeping bitterly; and she said to the knight of the Bull, What are you about, knight, that you do not ease me of the desire which hath

most tormented me? This whom you have at your feet is he who slew my brother, and hath made the old age of the king my father wretched; the enemy of my honour. Put an end to his life, that mine may be at peace.

Certes, said he of the Tyger to Selviam, the anger of a woman, when she can execute it, is more dangerous than the might of ten thousand men. Take my horse, and I will go see if by my entreatance his life may be saved. Then came he on foot to the bridge, and desired the knight of the Bull to delay awhile, and turning to Armisia he said, If, lady, any ancient enmity causeth you to desire the death of this knight, I pray you admit to memory that one of so great calling as you are, ought not to be void of mercy, and chiefly at such a time, when you have power to execute the extremity of your will. It is not seemly where God and nature have bestowed such gifts, that you should stain them with cruelty. Sufficient revenge is it for the conqueror that the conquered knows he hath received life at his hands; and if my reasons be not sufficient to appease your

anger, I pray you yet consider with yourself, that no person ever refused mercy who did not afterwards stand in need of it.

These and other like speeches of reason and virtue did the knight of the Tyger use, to appease Armisia; but what avails reason where there is no reason? Instead of hearing him she commanded him of the Bull to cut off the head of her enemy. He shall not kill him, cried he of the Tyger; for if you, lady, are determined at all events to have your will, I will defend him. It is to prevent wrong that I bear arms. I would, said the knight of the Bull, that it might please the princess to abate her anger, and grant life to him who deserves it not: but since you would defend him with threats, I will perform her bidding, and then, wounded as you see me, try you what you can do to revenge him!

The knight of the Tyger, though he had said that he would defend him, had no intention so to do, for Pompides could not have *stood* against him: he had only said this,

thinking that Armisia for fear of what her knight might suffer, he being already so hardly handled, would relent; but it availed nothing, for in persisting in their will they are firm, and nothing inconstant then. But fortune had so decreed it, lest farther hurt might befall, that while they were thus disputing, the knight gave up the ghost, for loss of blood. Armisia seeing Adraspe dead, could not be yet contented therewith, because his head was not smitten off as she commanded. Wherefore, because Pompides had not accomplished what she willed him, she withdrew in anger to her chamber, leaving him upon the bridge. He, who was passionately enamoured of her, and had for that reason kept the passage, remained in such sorrow, that not being able to stand, he sate himself upon the border of the bridge. He of the Tyger compassionating his trouble, as having himself resented the like, came to comfort him, which Pompides seemed to disdain, because he judged that his presence procured his misfortune. At this time Selviam came up, who seeing what had passed let the horses tied to an ash tree. As soon a

the knight of the Bull saw him he knew that he of the Tyger was Palmerin, and being full of joy he cried, Now I know not what ill can befall me, for which this pleasure would not atone!

Palmerin took off his helmet, and embraced him, and began to give him comfort in his passion, for as for his wounds, they were slight and required no care. It was not long before a damsel came down to invite them in, by Armisia's desire; for recollecting that she had had her revenge, and anger having yielded to her nature, which was in truth noble, she repented of what she had done, and sent to request pardon of the knight of the Tyger, desiring him to go into the apartment wherein he of the Bull was wont to be lodged. When they were unarmed, she came to visit them, and having now laid aside her anger, she said to the knight of the Tyger, I beseech you, Sir Knight, to excuse me, in that your words were not received by me as they deserved to be, and impute the fault to anger, justly excited, which deprived me of reason at the time;

as great griefs are wont to do, when that which occasioned them is present. And inasmuch as I know not whether you are acquainted with the cause of my hatred to that knight, I will tell you, that you may not condemn me whithersoever you go. I am daughter of king Meliade of Scotland, who owns this country. This dead knight, whose name is Adraspe, eldest son to the duke of Sisania, one of the principal lords of my father's realm, being in his house, became amorous of me; but though he was an excellent one in arms, and the best of this country, there were so many faults in his condition, that I would never listen to his suit. Nevertheless he was so importunate and void of reason, as he would not be answered: whereupon I was constrained to complain to prince Doriel my brother. When Adraspe perceived himself to be not favoured by him, and hated by me, he devised how he might compass that by force which by my own consent he never could do, and so laid his plots, that one day, when my brother was gone hunting, he, with a company of others as wicked as himself, fell upon him

and slew him. My father, greatly
treason, being wrought upon his owi
and his own son, grieved him, is so
feeble that he never could take ven
for it, and the duke moreover is so r
that he dared not meddle with him.

Yet was not his heart free from co
sorrow, in respect that nature cou
otherwise chuse; which I pitying, and
to assist my father to the uttermost I
and to revenge my brother's deat
the court, and caused this house to be
ed in this place, which being the c
passage in all this realm, I enterpri
have some valiant knight defend this
promising to marry him who shou
Adraspe, his rank being such as sh
no disparagement; for I knew that hi
would bring him here. Some underto
charge in hope of this guerdon, and h
and slew or conquered them all.

But after the knight of the Bull toc
charge upon him, Adraspe, fearing i
be his noble prowess, remained two n

before he came hither again : to-day, however, not able to resist his own proud thoughts, and his hour being come, he came to prove himself against him, and met with the fate which you have witnessed. This is the cause I had to desire his death; if it suffices to excuse me for the discourtesy I showed you, I pray you carry it to account.

Certes, lady, replied the knight of the Tyger, if I had known at first what you now tell me, so far from asking his life I would have hastened his death, for the very earth should not suffer upon her surface those that practice any treason against their prince. You, lady, have done what you owed to your father and to yourself; it remains now to fulfil it to Sir Pompides, my brother, who in the quality of his person will nothing disparage you, for he is grandson to king Fadrique of England, and son of Don Duardos, my lord, and your near kinsman.

I see now, quoth Armisia, how much I owe to this day's fortune; to-day I have seen my desire accomplished, the old age of my

father comforted, and the death of my brother avenged, and all this by the hand of one with whom I gain honour and full contentment. There is one thing only of which I can complain, and that is, that Sir Pompides should have been so long in this land, and should never let it be known who he was. Of you, Sir, I would know, whether you be Palmerin, or Florian, not that I am affectioned more to the one than the other, but because I would know which of them fortune hath made me so happy as to see.

Florian, replied he of the Tyger, is far off this place; I am Palmerin, your servant; and now indeed for other reason to be regarded as your brother, even as much as Doriel, were he alive. Worthy welcome then did Armisia afford him, not merely because he was so great a prince, but also for their nearness of kin, for her father and the mother of Don Duardos were brother and sister.

The death of Adraspe was reported the same day in the king of Scots' court, which was but four leagues from that place, and the

name of the knight that had slain him: whereupon the king on the next morning got into a litter, and being accompanied with many worthy knights, came to see Palmerin: and having given him many gracious salutations, he took Pompides in his arms, calling him Doriel, and saying that he accepted him for his son. Then gave he a thousand blessings to Armisia, who had been the cause that his grey hairs did not go down with sorrow to the grave. Forthwith, they espoused each other; but before the marriage was solemnized, Pompides went with an army towards Sisania, to kill or take the duke; in this however there was little ado, for the duke being advertised of his intent, fled into Ireland, whereupon his estates fell into the king's hands. They in England having knowledge of Pompides' marriage, made triumphs and bonfires for the good fortune that had happened to him, who was well beloved of every one, as well for being the son of Don Duardos, as for his virtuous bounty and knightly courage.

CHAPTER 130.

When the nuptials of Pompides were solemnized, to the great contentment of the king of Scots and his whole realm, the knight of the Tyger, took his leave of the king and the princess Armisia; his brother Pompides accompanied him to the place where he embarked, to whom he gave to understanding the charge wherein all princes were bound that received royal dignity, desiring him earnestly, since fortune had brought him to so great felicity, that he would use himself modestly and wisely, because fortune was so uncertain in herself, that sometime she put those persons in greater fear, whom she had placed in most assurance: so having given him much good advice to this effect, they

embraced one another, Pompides returned to the city, and Palmerin entering the ship, caused their sails to be hoisted, when the wind serving them well, in few days they finished their voyage. Some days he travelled without meeting any adventure; but as he beguiled the time in talking with Selviam of his love, he resented this idleness the less. At length he entered the kingdom of Hungary, where he found more to do; for that country being inhabited by many knights, he began to meet with adventures, and some thereof great and perilous. One there was which is worthy to be recorded. On the fifth day of his travels through that land, it was his chance to arrive at even-song time in a goodly forest, wherein the trees were so high and thick that they kept off the rays of the sun from the earth, and in the midst thereof, among some ash trees, he came to a fair fountain, which was covered with an arch of marvellous workmanship; and because the weather was hot, he alighted to refresh himself at this fountain and pass the *sesta* under these ash trees. In the mean while Selviam suffered his horses to graze in

the pasture. This repose did not continue long, for while he of the Tyger was washing his hands and face, his helmet being placed upon a stone beside him, there rushed out a damsel from the thickest of the wood, with her hair dishevelled, her face streaming with tears, her colour gone, and her apparel all torn by the trees: at last she espied the knight, to whom she came running a great pace, and casting herself at his feet, she remained fearfully looking about her a good while, having not the power to speak one word.

Moved with pity at beholding her in this state, and weening he that had feared her was at hand, he reached his helmet, which he had no sooner clasped on his head, but he beheld coming the way that the damsel came, a giant strongly armed, carrying in his hand a huge mace; he seeing the damsel had betaken herself to the knight's protection said, Weak protection have you found! and so without more words he struck at him with his mace.

He of the Tyger received the blow on his shield, which was broken in two by its force, but the requital he made was such, that cutting through every thing, he reached the giant's right arm with such a stroke, that none of the blows which he afterwards dealt with it were of any effect. The damsel having now recovered her recollection, and seeing the giant before her, and not believing that he of the Tyger could stand against him, would have fled to hide herself in the forest, but Selviam detained her, and advised her to stop and see the end. Ah! squire, cried she, do not do me so great wrong; what I have already suffered is enough! Why would you have that devil kill me after he has killed your master? for nothing can withstand his strength. Still, quoth Selviam, I will have you see what fortune may determine.

He of the Tyger having no shield for his defence, availed himself of his skill and nimbleness. But though the giant put forth all his endeavours, the loss of blood from his arm was such that he could scarce lift his mace,

and full glad would he have been if succour had reached him; for by the device of the Tyger, and by the blows which he received, he knew that more strength than he now possest was needed against such an enemy. Nevertheless, doing all he could, he took the mace in his left hand; but with that he had no skill, and knew not how to aim his blows; so that he now began to think only how he might defend himself. He of the Tyger, perceiving his weakness, bestirred himself so, that it seemed as if there was no interval between his blows; and as the giant to avoid them shifted from one place to another, and was heavy by reason of his great size, he became weary, and placing his back against one of the ash trees, he sate down at the foot thereof, in which posture he made better resistance than he had done before; for having his back protected by the tree, the knight could only strike at him straight forward, and that he could not approach to do, he having no shield to protect himself from the mace, which the other now wielded with both hands. Greatly was he of the Tyger confounded, seeing that a giant

who was already conquered, saved himself by so simple a remedy; and that he also might rest himself, he leant himself against a tree likewise. I beseech thee, said the giant, to let me know what is thy name, because I have evermore thought that no ten of the best knights on the earth could do as much as thou hast done, neither that they could have been able to resist me half this while.

I am content, answered the knight of the Tyger, on condition thou wilt promise to tell me thy name also, and what thou dost in this land, and the cause why thou didst pursue this damsel, that being a thing which appears so shameful to the brave. So much, quoth the giant, thou shalt command at my hands; therefore understand that I am called Vascalion of Orranto, son to the giant Lurcon, who was slain at Constantinople, by the hands of Primaleon*, with whom he was so hardy as to enter the combat, to revenge the death of Don Perrequin of Duazos, and to have in marriage Grido-

* Primaleon, P. 1, C. 17.

nia, heiress to the duchy of Ormedes, who was afterwards espoused to Primaleon. At that time my father was slain, he left me and one brother, who was named Darmaco after his grandfather, and a son of Don Duardos who is now much talked of, slew him. I, whom fortune never yet failed in any adventure which presented itself, could not rest for the desire of revenging my father and brother. And because I could not do this upon Primaleon, he having ceased to put himself in peril, I determined to go through this country, and the empire of Greece, and satisfy my wrath upon the innocent, seeing that I could not upon the guilty; and believing that I might peradventure meet with the slayer of my brother, or some other so nearly allied to Primaleon, that I might be contented. To day I met this damsel, going, as she tells me, to the court of the emperor Palmerin, to Lionarda the princess of Thrace: now for that I am desirous to do all the injury that I may to any of that emperor's court, I resolved to ravish this damsel. But at the time I was about to fulfil my pleasure on her, a squire *of hers*, who had escaped my hands, came

and hindered me, with the aid of five knights, whom I have left to hold combat with ten of mine, some of whom are of my kindred, and will give good account of them. So leaving them to take their prey, I, on foot as I was, followed the damsel, who took herself to flight so soon as she saw the five knights begin to charge me. Thus have I told you the whole circumstance; now it remaineth that you reveal yourself to me, according as at first you promised.

Believe me Vascalion, answered the knight of the Tyger, he who placeth his happiness in evil actions, meeteth for the most part the punishment thereof, the proof thou mayest now behold in thyself: for thou, being not content with the death of thy father and his brother, who were slain in equal battle, seekest to revenge thy villainous will on this innocent damsel. Know that I am a kinsman to Primaleon, and am called Palmerin of England, son to Don Duardos and Flerida, the sister of Primaleon. Look to thyself, for I hope to rid the world of thee and thy cursed intentions.

Full sorry was Vascalion at he
great name, for he was in no c
resist him. Nevertheless, coura
spair supplying him strength, he
as he could, being resolved to sho
he should purchase the victory de
while he had been sitting much
flowed from his arm, so that he
enfeebled; and in spite of all hi
when he felt himself rigorously
his enemy, and had no hope of life
fain have interrupted the battle wi
parley, believing that succour mig
reach him. But this was also in t
the knight, who now felt the vi
his, and waxing impatient that
layed, prest upon him fiercer th
and cut the mace from his hand.
having no other remedy, sought t
in his arms. He of the Tyger drew
charged him anew with so many
he felled him to the ground; an
tent to see him so conquered, he
upon him, and when he had tak
helmet, presently parted his hea
shoulders. The sight hereof mad

sel so glad, as she had before been sorrowful. Lady, said he of the Tyger to her, the five knights who succoured you, cannot chuse but be in great danger: I will go seek them forth; in the mean while you may come fair and softly after with my squire, who shall take you up behind him on his horse. Then mounting on his own, which Selviam held in readiness, he took that way which he saw the giant come, when he pursued the damsel, and it was not long before he heard the clashing of the swords, which seemed to him either to be far off, or dealt with little force. This battle, however, was nigh at hand, but they who were engaged in it were now so weary, that they could scant hold their swords, and the hilts turned in their grasp. There were five on the one side, and six on the other, and four lay dead; he well perceived that the six were the giant's knights, for among them were two of giantly stature, who bore the whole brunt of the battle; among the five he knew Dramiante, the son of king Recindos, by his device. Then rushing among them, he struck one of the two huge ones with such might upon

his helmet, that the blow reached the head and brought him down. The others seeing him dead, the giant not at hand, and their enemies thus succoured, began to be so dismayed, that they had now no other thought than how to save themselves. And as he of the Tyger was not yet wearied, and his strength unlike that of the others, he and his companions soon made an end of that fray with the lives of their opponents, who either for love or for fear of the giant, not one of them yielded to the conquerors; such is true fidelity. By this time the damsel came up with Selviam, and when the others saw him they knew the knight of the Tyger, whereat their joy was the greater, especially when they learnt the death of the giant, for they were all his friends and of the emperor's household. They were Dramiante, and Frisol, son to duke Drapos of Normandy, Luymanes of Burgundy, Tremoram, and Blandidon: all these five knights were, however, in such plight as somewhat abated the joy of the victory. Blandidon and Tremoram especially, had been so handled by the two nephews of the giant, that they were forced

to be conveyed on litters, which their squires and Selviam made, to a little town not far from the forest, where they were carefully attended till their wounds were healed, being still accompanied by their friends, and by the damsel, who till they were restored to perfect health would not leave them. The knight of the Tyger remained there with them while their health was doubtful; when he thought them safe he took his leave and resumed his journey, the desire he had to arrive at the end making him lose all others. But before he reached Constantinople, the death of Vascalion and his ten knights was rumoured there, for the news of great adventures is always bruited far and wide.

CHAPTER 131.

He of the Tyger continued so long in travel, as at length he came into the empire of Greece, without the finishing any adventure worthy the rehearsal: for the device of the Tyger, and the report of him in all places abroad, struck fear into all. But the nearer he approached to Constantinople, the more he found himself passioned for the love of his lady, remembering her unkind speeches, and the sharp entreatance she used to him, when first he departed from the court, and not remembering that at that time it was not known who he was, neither had he performed any feats worthy of estimation; and that she had since repented of her anger. But Selviam still comforted him, and made him lay aside

these fond imaginations. At length one holy day, about the hour of tierce, they came in sight of the city; and they stood looking at it awhile from a hill, for he of the Tyger delighted to content his eyes and indulge his fancy upon the palace of the emperor, and the apartment of his lady, which might well be seen from that eminence; revolving in himself many amorous thoughts, which sometimes gave him pain and sometimes pleasure, for of these changes and contrarieties is love composed. At last, as one resolved to end these musings, though he could not end their cause, he went down the hill, and lacing on his helmet, and taking his shield and his lance from Selviam, advanced without him; for knowing that that court was always frequented with adventures, and the place of the palace in particular, he wished, if any should present itself on his arrival, to go through it before he was discovered by means of Selviam: and for this cause he bade him follow at a distance, and keep an eye upon him, that when he dismounted, he might be at hand. Now, as if that his expectations might have the issue they desired,

it came to pass, that a knight had arrived at the emperor's court the day before, having two squires attending on him, who carried his helmet, shield, and lance; by the greatness of his stature and of his limbs he seemed made for great things; haughty was he in deeds, and arrogant in words, as he plainly manifested. He coming proudly into the emperor's presence, said to him with a loud voice, High and mighty prince, know that I am Arnolfo, lord of the Isle Astronica. My father and the giant Bravorante were great friends, for that their governments were near one another; and to confirm this friendship long continued between them, they both concluded that I should marry with Arlanza, Bravorante's daughter; but because both our years and discretion served not as then, they prolonged our marriage for the space of five years. In which time Bravorante departed this life, so likewise his sons, Camboldam, Calfurnio, Bracolam, and Baleato, who were slain by the sons of Don Duardos. And to abolish altogether the house of Bravorante, Colambar his wife, by the counsel of the magician Alfernao, sent her daughter

Arlanza, my lady, into this country, to the end, that by their deceit they might lead the knight of the Savage Man from this court, that revenge might be taken on him for the death of her sons, which would remedy her inward sorrows, or at least in some sort comfort them; but the issue hath been that Alfernao is dead, and Colambar also, and her lordship lost, and her enemies in possession thereof, and worse than all, Arlanza is in the hands of the great destroyer of her blood. I, who without her do not wish for life, am come hither to prove myself with this knight of the Savage Man, and by force of arms to deliver her who holdeth me captive. But I learn that he is not here, whereat I am less contented than I should be to die by his hands; for I should not feel it shame to be conquered by him who was never yet conquered by any, and then should I be freed from these careful thoughts which torment me; for this purpose I intend to wait his coming. Now, if in the mean while you will give me leave to make some trial at arms against the knights of your court, I shall count myself highly pleasured, for life

is so hateful to me that I would willingly
its cost satisfy some part of my desire. A
if there be here any who are akin to the so
of Don Duardos, I should do battle wi
them more willingly than with any other.

You have undertaken an enterprize, knigh
replied the emperor, in which I know n
what you may gain Neither the knight
the Savage Man, nor Palmerin his brothe
is at this time in my court, whom I coul
wish to be here. Nevertheless, if in th
time you expect their coming, you be
desirous to make known your valour, I gra
you the liberty of the field, where, as th
knights of my court are not wont to be idl
they will not fail to visit you.

I desire nothing more, said Arnolfo, a
so without more words he entered the fiel
That same day before the sun went down h
jousted against three knights, two of the
being unhorsed, and the third vanquishe
in the combat with the sword; and thoug
the battle was of short continuance, Arnol
plainly gave proof that great resistance w
needed against his blows and strength.

On the next morning he entered the field again, being in black armour, and having painted in his shield little flames of fire in a field of sable, and there he waited who should come. He who came was the knight of the Tyger, clad in his accustomed armour, which was broken and battered, and the device upon his shield was so bruised and defaced that it was scarcely distinguishable. As he past under the empress's apartment he beheld his lady there, whereat he was so suddenly moved, that he remained awhile like one beside himself; but the courage which at such times upheld him, recalled him to himself. He seeing Arnolfo ready for the joust, enquired the cause thereof, which was declared unto him by one of the judges of the field. Then turning his eyes there whither love and inclination guided them, after he had satisfied them with the sight of her who destroyed him, he said within himself, Lady, I would fain you should see me, that you might know I remember you; not because I can need your favour in so slight a danger as this; it would not be *well to attack* any enemy with

so great vantage, for so should he be hon
ed in his overthrow, and the conqueror c
have no merit to plead before you. Ha
said this, and seeing that the emperor
Primaleon, and all the court were ey
him, and that some said it was the kn
of the Tyger, for they could distinguish
device, he advanced himself against the o
saying, Know, Arnolfo, that thou hast
before thee a kinsman to the knight of
Savage Man, therefore if thou hast
thing to revenge on his lineage, thou
now the time to do it. Arnolfo was not
sorry at these words, all his desire bein
prove his prowess upon one of that
and with this hope he gave his hors
spur and ran against him. He of the T
received him as he came; both hit the m
he of the Tyger lost a stirrup, and his s
was pierced in the encounter by his ene
spear; Arnolfo went to the ground.
beginning gave the emperor and Prim
much to think of; for as they had
proofs on the yesterday of Arnolfo's pro
they knew that the strength of his oppo
must perforce be great. The knight o

Tyger, whose horse was feeble and weary with long travel, alighted, and met Arnolfo on foot, who came to attack him. Certes, if the encounter which he gave had been that of a mighty man, the blows which he delivered appeared not less so; and all was necessary to resist Arnolfo, for not only was he a good knight, but the anger and melancholy which he resented at seeing himself overthrown, gave him new strength, and he was resolved to sell his life at the dearest price he could. Moreover, having heard his enemy say that he was akin to him of the Savage, he thought that peradventure this might be he who had conquered and slain the brother of Colambar; all these things kindled him and gave him the greater courage. Both went on foyning and smiting awhile, the battle being such that it might well be accounted among the most famous that had ever been seen there. Neither of them failed one jot; they laid on with might and main, and demeaned themselves as deliverly as fiercely, and no weakness could be seen in either. Truly, said the emperor, Arnolfo had reason to be confident in himself,

and yet methinks Fortune will soon cut short his imaginations, for by what I judge of his opponent, greater strength is required to withstand him. It is well, replied Primaleon, that the evil ones should be punished, and their devices frustrated. Arnolfo and the knight of the Tyger had now so hacked one another, as their armour witnessed their cruel rage and fury, especially Arnolfo's, which in many places showed the flesh, and was covered with blood; the great loss thereof caused him to give over to take breath awhile, when he desired the knight of the Tyger to tell him his name.

Know, Arnolfo, he replied, that thou hast before thee a near kinsman to the knight of the Savage Man, who will put an end to thy imaginations, as he has ere now to others which were as bad as thine. Now then quoth Arnolfo, hap what may hap, I cannot be discontented; if I conquer thee, I shall think that I have taken vengeance upon mine enemy; and if I be overcome I shall be content to visit Bravorante and his sons. Do therefore what thou canst! He

of the Tyger, seeing him so desperately minded, that death or victory would alike content him, began to avail himself of all his skill and force; and as he had now wounded him in many places, from which much blood had ran, he let it flow, asking him oftentimes if he would yield himself. But Arnolfo, who would not do this, fought on till all his strength and senses failed him, and he fell at his feet. The other took off his helmet, and seeing he had no life left in him, he kneeled down, and thanked God for his victory.

Then came Primaleon, and king Polendos, and other princes, who conducted the knight of the Tyger into the empress's chamber, where taking off his helmet, he kneeled down before the emperor, who embraced him, weeping for joy; for as nature now by reason of his great age began to fail within him, any great joy or sorrow made him shed tears, as is natural to those who are in extreme old age. The knight of the Tyger having kissed his hands, came and humbled himself before the empress and Gridonia, and

going then to the other ladies, Lionar
queen of Thrace embraced him with
love, for the benefits which she had re
from him. But when he came to h
and mistress, such was their behaviou
caused suspicion of their love to al
present; for in both might change of
tenance be perceived, and faltering s
whereat the emperor and empress we
contented, for they had sometime tal
marrying them together, and now p
ing that their inclinations were confor
they concluded fully thereupon.
courtesies being performed, Primaleo
lendos, and the other chivalry accom
him to his wonted lodging, all bei
joyful; for they held that having Pa
in the court, the height of all chiva
there. They found Selviam in his
ment, who took his arms, and then he
with his friends, being now favoured
love, time and fortune giving him no
repose, which till now he had never e

CHAPTER 132.

Some days Palmerin abode in the court so busied with visits, that he had no leisure to profit by the time as he would have wished; but when this was something abated, and he could attend to what his heart desired, the thoughts which never left him so tormented him that they never let him rest, this being the way with true lovers. And as at that season there were few feasts or dances, which were the occasions when he could with least suspicion talk with Dramaciana, he knew no means to compass how he might speak with her, and beseech her to fulfil the promise which she had given him at their parting. But talking with Selviam, who was the partaker of all *his secrets*, and who had fre-

quent entrance into the empress's house, he bade him consult with her, and devise how she might speak with him. This Selviam did as Palmerin wished, for Dramaciana was so much his friend that little urgency was needed. That same night she spoke to him at her chamber window, which looked out into the court of the ladies' apartment; this place being surrounded with arches was shadowed.

Palmerin received no less contentment in speaking with Dramaciana, than he would if it had been to her lady; for knowing that she made her acquainted with all her secret passions, he judged that the hour of his good fortune could never come to pass without her assistance. Dramaciana coming to the window and finding him awaiting her, said, Sir Palmerin, you may well think that she who adventures thus much to do you service, would be loth to hide any thing from you that might return you benefit; and this you may persuade yourself, that the dutiful good-will I bear you maketh me so hardy, not knowing whether I am deceived, or if *my friendship* be worse bestowed than I

make account of. It is not meet, said Palmerin, that I should requite with words one to whom I owe so much. Certify me now, I beseech you, what end, as you think, will my long service come unto; for the hope I have received by your means hath evermore sustained me until this present, from the cruel extremities, which else had been sufficient to kill me.

He that knows so well, said Dramaciana, how to declare his grief, shall never make me believe that he can be deprived of good hope, considering also, that your noble behaviour cannot be blemished by forgetfulness. And this you may build upon, that the lady Polinarda hath been as grievously passioned during the time of your long absence, as you have been daily tormented with fearful and displeasant thoughts, which you say you have suffered. If these news deserve a guerdon, I ask no other than that you redeem the promises which I have made for you. I have devised that she shall speak to you, at a window no bigger than this, narrow, and

made still narrower* by an iron bar from top to bottom; it is in one of these chambers which look into the Garden of Flerida. I must tell you that this was no little thing to obtain from one of her condition. Now do you make such use of the opportunity that you shall not need to speak together again so secretly, for neither is the place such as to permit it, nor her courage sufficient, whatever may be her inclination. Mine, answered Palmerin, hath never deceived me in the confidence I had of your good will, which when I called to remembrance caused me to abandon all the unhappy fears wherewith I have been too long acquainted, and now I lose them altogether, having your favourable furtherance on my side. But when I consider the great favour I shall receive, having the means to speak with my gracious lady, I find myself dismayed in re-

* The fitness of narrow windows and iron bars must have been well known to the emperor and empress, both from their own adventures, and those of their daughter Flerida. Palmerin de Oliva, C. 47. Primaleon, P. 2. C. 27.

spect of my unworthiness and her honourable dignity, so that I shall be abashed, and fear that this will withhold me from discoursing my long and tedious travails for her sake. Certes, Sir Palmerin, said Dramaciana, they have been such that you may fairly discourse them any where. For if you have been so valiant and hardy as to spend your time hitherto in travails of exceeding danger, and yet have finished them all worthily, it is needless you should now dismay yourself, presenting your person in the place that is free from any hazard. And if you will tell me how this fear doth alway accompany great affection, I know that it will last no longer than the beginning of your talk; for then you will dismiss it, and will find so much to say, that I fear, instead of telling true services, you will mingle false ones with the relation, which is the way of love, when this fear is gone.

Palmerin would fain have chid her for this, but night was short, and as their conference had begun late she would tarry no longer, only telling him the place, and appointing him

the hour to speak with his lady.]
went to his chamber, where he s
night in thinking on the talk that h
between them; and the good hop
through her means deprived him
which in these cases is as much dest
unexpected joy as by continual sorr
time being come which Dramacian
pointed, he took his way to the a
place, being privily armed, and attir
came the occasion; and leaving Selv
out to keep watch, he got into th
And certes, when Palmerin foun
alone there, and remembered whe
going, this seemed to him the gre
ger that he had ever past through.
the contest wherein he was about t
his arms and courage would avail h
was only his deservings which coul
profit him, and how these might a
knew not, seeing that they were to
ed before one who was herself of su
that all other appeared little. The
approached to the window the gr
fear became. His limbs trembled,
failed, neither had his understandin

enough, at that hour, to help him in this dismay. Then stopping a little to recover himself, he took heart from the remembrance of what he had exploited, and of the true faith with which he had served her; and he went up to the window where his lady had waited for him, and seen him how falteringly he advanced. And then being half confounded, and forgetting to offer any such courtesy as the occasion required, he began to say, Lady, if my fortune hath reserved this guerdon for me after so many long and laboursome travails, I have no reason to find myself aggrieved, for your presence hath the power to make me forget all. To have endured them in your service is of itself so great a reward, that it is I who remain the debtor: but I would not that this acknowledgment should be to my hurt, though I know that those things which I prize the most have the most troubled me. The fault lies in your condition, which is of so free a quality that nothing satisfies it. For this I am sorry, not so much for what concerns myself, as because I know it may be some stain upon you. This is what I feel, for as for the rest I am

so accustomed to suffer all things, that
evil which might befal me could be deem
grievous, since as a remedy I should ha
the knowledge that it came from you.
could I have endured my life had it not be
for this remedy. You, lady, who know th
these are not mere words, since the actio
with which I have served you sufficient
prove their truth, see now if after such lo
proof some recompence should not follow,
only to show that you are sensible of the
for towards you I am so easily contente
that I neither dare to ask any thing, nor
plead my services, least I should seem to a
any thing thereby. Do you, who know wh
they have been, judge of them, and if you
not think good to recompence them with
equal guerdon, be it as you will, for your w
cannot but in some degree be mine also.

I did not think, sir Palmerin, replied Po
narda, that it was to reveal this you had ma
me come here; but two things deceived me
the relationship between us, and the co
panionship of our childhood, which ma
me desire to see you, and question you cc

g your adventures,—and Dramaciana,
I now suspect to be a greater friend
ı than to me. But seeing the fault is
›, I rather blame myself than you,
h you seek to satisfy your desire at the
ce of my honour, and with no hazard
ırs: it costs you a few words, and if
ıld be deceived by them, I should be
ht ill of by you yourself, and know not
[should gain. I do not deny but that
ıowledge of this your affection makes
:l myself something indebted unto you,
›t so much so as that it cannot be paid
ut danger of my fame. It is not rea-
le that you should wish your exploits
rewarded at my cost; they are such
hey have brought with them their own
d; the satisfaction which you feel in
is not so little but that it well repays
›r the labour they have occasioned. If
ıtention wherewith you say you serve
as your words describe it, it is meet
›u to make it known to the emperor
grandfather and mine, and also to my
'; they will be willing to match us both
ıer, for not only are your rank and estates

such as should be sought for, but your deeds also have been such, that nothing can be denied you. When they shall be so pleased, you may lay aside other fears, for she who hath inclination enough to point out to you this course, cannot want it to set your heart at rest. This is what you can obtain of me, and do not think this is little, for I am dissatisfied with myself that it is so much, and know not how you will esteem of me.

I now see, lady, replied Palmerin, that my deeds have not that value in your eyes, which you admit them to possess elsewhere, since you would have their guerdon come from the will of others, and not from that to which I look. Little comfort is it to know that my remedy is to come from other than the one who inflicted the wound. I do not say that my joy will not be sufficiently great that the emperor and prince Primaleon should be willing, as you say: but theirs should be the last wills to win, and I would fain that when their consent was asked, yours should so fully have been given, that theirs were only to be asked for form's sake.

iis I know that I am asking much; but
faith and love with which I have ever
:d you embolden me, and that faith is
oud of what it thinks it has merited, that
nnot be contented with any recompence
n by another. But if such be your con-
n, that you can be fain to repay my af-
on thus unworthily, do your pleasure in
hings. I thought that of all evils which
can suffer, absence was the worst; but
I see that it is otherwise, for in absence
hath alway some fond imaginations to
ole him, but in the presence of the be-
d mistress he cannot thus deceive him-
and then what is made apparent destroy-
all confidence.

l not think, Sir Palmerin, said Polinarda,
eceive such answer for my words; ill me-
ks have you requited them! I excuse
, however, on the score of that love
ch you profess towards me; and since I
:eive that love hath so blinded you, as
vill not suffer you to see the more than
lest readiness in me to pleasure you, I am
tent to give you yet a further and greater

assurance. You are so great a prince, of such qualities, that you think you de every thing; I would not have you be that this persuades me, for it weighs with me than the love which I know bear towards me, and in that I trust what you most desire will always be which most beseems my honour and pe Speak to the emperor and to my father, obtain their consent, and be assured of n If this sufficeth not, I know not what mo promise, nor what more you ought to as

Nay, quoth Palmerin, if I were disconte now, it were fit that you refused what more I asked. I am not so thankless a to perceive that this is the aim and sco all my good fortune. Then taking her h he kissed it many times, not without on her part, love and shame forcing t from those who, like her, find themse thus making their first avowal. And other talk between them, they espo themselves in the presence of Dramac and the queen of Thrace, by whom princess had already been advised to

this, and she wished that both should be present, that she might entirely lose all the fear and suspicion which still lurked in her of that queen. For such is the nature of great love, that in these things it fears equally friend and foe, dreading every thing, and trusting nothing. And now as the night was far spent and the day began to break, Palmerin took leave of his lady and his friends, his care being now the less, but his love the same; for when that is great nothing destroys it.

CHAPTER 133.

During the time this great joy was in
court of Constantinople, for the comin
Palmerin, tidings came which gave the
peror enough to think on; for it now app
ed that the threats of Albayzar were not
words, he having with his letters and
sengers stirred up the whole Morisma.
was known by an ambassador from the
dan Belagriz, who had in like manner
summoned by him; but he rejected
call, and being mindful of his true fri
ship, was now making ready to come in
of Constantinople, well knowing the da
to be so great that every aid would be
needful. And while he was preparing
things for war, he sent this intelligence to

emperor, bidding him call upon all his friends, and provide for the defence of his empire.

The emperor being at this time overcharged with age, found himself far unable to deal in these affairs, otherwise than by his judgment, and even that was now at times troubled. But the greatness of this occasion somewhat revived him, and his great age and great experience in things of great import had taught him not to neglect any thing. So after replying to the soldan Belagriz, and giving him thanks for the good forwardness of his friendship, and the intelligence which he had sent him, he dispatched messengers forthwith to Arnedos, king of France, his son-in-law; Recindos, king of Spain; Don Duardos, of England; the emperor Vernao, of Allemaigne; Mayortes, the Great Khan, and all the lords and princes of Christendom; for there was not one who had not some bond of relationship, or near friendship, with his house, and if any had been without it, they would have held themselves for exiles and ignoble persons. Incontinently, when they had received these tidings, they all

went in person to visit the emperor, leaving their force in readiness for when it should be wanted; for as they had their sons dwelling in that court, where they had been brought up, and thereby exposed to the coming danger, this was also another reason for repairing thither, to be present with them. As soon as this news was bruited abroad, all errant knights, who were seeking adventures in divers places, laid aside all other labours, and hastened to Constantinople, where they thought to find the greatest, so that in short time the city was filled with right noble chivalry. And though after their arrival many adventures befel, which in other times would have bound them to depart, the emperor forbade this, and would give none leave, for the tidings of the coming of the enemy freshened now every day. And as much as these things are always exaggerated by fear and rumour, every day the wonder grew, and marvels were reported of the great fleets of the Turks, and their stores, and of the names of the giants, and their terrible fierceness, great as these things were, fear making them appear greater. But this very report, though

peradventure it were hurtful to feeble spirits, only quickened the brave, and made them the better bestir themselves in their preparations.

Meantime advice came to Palmerin that the Perilous Isle was taken by Trofolante the Fearful, and Satiafor the governor thereof slain. Of this Trofolante mention hath many times been made in this history; he was an old enemy, of the race of the giants, and moreover, of his own condition hardy and cruel. He, with other companions, came with a damnable design to the court of the emperor when the tourney of the new knights was appointed against the married ones and strangers, in Constantinople. And because he was sometimes vanquished, his hatred was the more increased, and he sought to satisfy it by cruelty and wicked actions; for in that same tourney he was vanquished by Florendos, and had the like mishap the day following, by the prowess of the knight of the Savage Man, who guarded the shield of the Palm Tree in the forest of the Clear Fountain, which the damsel from Daliarte

brought to the emperor Palmerin
might deliver it to the knight who
the honour of the day in the tournai
was likewise his fortune after, whe
velled to the castle of Almourol to
the shield of Miraguarda, to be va
there by Florendos, who guarded
returning thence he met with the
the Damsels, when offering to t
from him, they fell to the combat,
end he was again vanquished. Th
of his so many and sundry foils, a
the knights of the emperor's cou
him to devise by what means he m
some injury to them that belong
emperor: and as besides this reas
akin to Calfurnio, Camboldam, and
thren, he greatly desired to reve
death. And for the purpose o
some means to this effect with Col
repaired to her island; but when
there, he found things far otherwis
desired. Whereupon he crossed o
Perilous Isle, having with him tw
who were of the same cast, and of
evil minds; and there, under false

they deceitfully obtained entrance into the castle, for Satiafor, suspecting no ill, admitted them; and when he would have guarded against them it was too late, for Trofolante and his comrades were mighty men, and finding those of the castle unarmed, slew them all, and Satiafor among them.

But the pleasure of this victory was very short to them, for Argentao, the governor of the Profound Isle, hearing the treason, came by a secret wile suddenly on them with his power, and taking Trofolante, sent him to the emperor's court: where he arrived just at such time as an armament was preparing to set off to recover it. There was no little joy at his coming, since not only was the island now secured, but great pain was saved to all, inasmuch as the departure of Palmerin and his friends was thus prevented.

Trofolante was condemned by the law, and publicly executed, according as his treacherous dealings deserved: and Argentao was honourably recompenced for the great service which he had performed.

It was not long before Daliarte arrive
at his coming there were new rejo
which his person, together with the n
which they alway stood of his wisdo
casioned; and as he knew by his art
passed in his isle, he gave due thar
those who were ready to adventure
covering it. After him, there came
court prince Floraman, Albanis of
Roramonte, Luymanes of Burgundy,
nardo, and many other princes and k
who had every one forsaken their
countries, laying aside all other tho
to assist the emperor of Constant
with their aid, because they had he
the Turk's preparation. So that the
collected together the greater part o
well nigh all the chivalry of the
wherewith the court was so ennoble
splendid, that it had never at any tim
more so.

Now came news that king Fadrique o
land was gathered to his fathers, an
Don Duardos had taken the sceptr
great solemnity, and great love on t

of his vassals. Some sorrow did the news of this king's death occasion; the emperor was he who most resented it, for as they were of the same age, and he was now very old, even as it were at the very end of his days, this appeared to him a token of his own departure. The worst infirmity which old age brings with it, is, that it hath death continually before its eyes; and so it was with the emperor, for by the sorrow which he felt at these tidings, or by reason of the natural fear of death, he became visibly changed; and his speech was now without connection, or if it carried with it discourse of reason, it was of short continuance, as one whose wits were bewildered. The death of the king was solemnized with suitable obsequies, and with funeral games, according to the custom of Greece. The court put on mourning, which however did not last long, for as princes and personages every day arrived, whom it was meet to receive with a joyful welcome, this alone was of such weight as to put aside all sorrowful thoughts, which also are dissipated by course of time, according to

the order of nature. For if the sorrow which is felt for the death of those whom we greatly affect continued long, it would destroy those who endure it.

CHAPTER 148.

The court increased every day in number of knights, who for the fame of this war with the Turks, laid aside all other enterprizes, to be present in this signal danger. He of the Savage, when the bruit thereof reached his ears, knowing that he was the cause of all this mighty stir, took with all speed the road to Constantinople; not, however, leaving Arlanza and her damsels, for the obligation wherein he felt himself bound to her would not allow of that; a remembrance this which obtains in none but the virtuous and noble, they who are otherwise having no respect to any thing but their own interest, and what may profit themselves. Three days before they reached the city, it befel

that in passing through a forest, they came to a little rivulet, and there alighted to pass the *sesta*, for the day was hot. It was not long before a child came along the same road, upon a palfrey, with his hands tied behind him; he was lamenting loudly, and two men on foot accompanied or guarded him. The knight of the Savage, being armed but without his helmet, arose and crost their way; and taking hold of his bridle, enquired the cause of his lamentations. To this the two brigands would fain have made him answer with their bills; but he knew so well how to demean himself with them, that he saved himself from their hands by slaying them both. Then he turned again to the child, who said to him, Sir, since there is in you so great virtue and strength as your deeds testify, I beseech you do not waste time with me, but go succour a damsel of great worth and beauty, whom three knights are carrying away prisoner, with the intent to deliver her to one who is her enemy. If you delay your help will be of no avail, for they are taking her by another road, which passes under yonder high oaks;—pointing to the

place with his finger while he spake—and this day she will be given into the hands of one who will use no mercy with her. He, upon hearing this, forgetful of the haste with which he was travelling, and the place whither he was going, took his helmet, and mounted his horse, desiring Arlanza to wait for him in that place; and if peradventure night should overtake her before he returned, to repair to a town which was in sight hard by, and there he would speedily join her if he remained in such plight, after the battle, that it was possible. But as any thing will strike fear to a heart which hath been accustomed to misfortunes, so great was the dread which Arlanza felt of being left without her protector in a strange land, that she sate herself upon the ground, wringing her hands like one bereft of her senses, and saying, Ill do you keep the promises, sir knight, which you have alway made me, affirming always, that no adventure which might betide soever, should make you leave me, till you had placed me in perfect repose. This is what I ought to have expected from you if I had remembered the death of my brethren; but

for one who hath placed her love
who slew them, just guerdon of h
is this which you now give her.
going, and if fortune, as my un
forebodes, should not ordain for y
she hath ever hitherto done, I am n
in this country, and if I should be
be to my greater hurt, for I know
the daughter of Bravorante and
could discover her lineage, that
not be to her greater peril. But s
condition is such that you can be
leave me surrounded with such evi
first, and you will then be rid of n
also shall be rid of myself; for
life is hopeless may well be satis
death.

Lady mine, replied the knight, w
fidence could you have in me tha
deal with you as I ought, if you w
me here before your eyes refuse t
a damsel who is forcibly carried a
for whom succour is demanded?
that the wickedness of these ene
be in my favour, and that I shall

u with victory; lay aside therefore these
ırs: for though this confidence should de-
ive me, my soul shall accompany you, and
ıme to excuse my body, if disasters or ill
rtune should have taken possession of that.
s he was ending these words, he saw the
ıights and the damsel pass along the road
hich the child had pointed out. Clapping
ıurs to his horse he followed them, but
ıe distanee was so great, that before he
ame up to them they had crost two hills;
ut he got before them by striking across
ıe valley, and before they came up had
ime to breathe a little, and to rest his horse.
Vhen the knights drew nigh, he perceived
hat the damsel being weary of weeping,
vas cursing the day when she was born, and
ne of them was threatening her with foul
words. This one had his aventayle open,
and as his countenance was fierce, and he
was of great stature, and large limbed, he
seemed as though he were a doughty one,
for a stern countenance is the natural index
of a stout heart. But he of the Savage, not
being a man to be affected by such sem-
blances, sate *ready* for the joust, and said

to him with a loud voice, Since thou hast offered force to one who cannot defend herself, you must offer it to me also before you can pass farther. It seems, cried one of them, that you are out of love with life, since you venture it where you are so sure of losing it. These words having past, he ran at him, but with such fortune, his hour being now come, that at the first encounter, he was thrown dead to the earth, with a piece of the lance in his breast.

He who had threatened the damsel and who was chief of the three, said to the other, mind her that she does not escape, while I take vengeance upon this wretch. But the rage with which he ran against him, made him miss his attaint, and as he past, he of the Savage had time to lay hold on the straps of his helmet, which he did with such force that he plucked him to the ground, and the helmet remained in his hand, and before the other could recover himself, he dealt him a blow upon his bare head which cleft it to the brain. The third leaving the damsel, couched his lance and spurred against

ı, but with no other effect than that of aking his lance. He of the Savage deered him a blow upon the helmet in passg, which brought him to the ground, and ıping down before he had recovered from e stunning force thereof, unlaced the helet, and struck off his head, remaining well eased with this cheap victory, not merely ır being out of danger himself, but also for ıe sake of appearing well before the damsel, ho by the little he had seen of her, seemed o him a fair one. Then returning his sword nto the scabbard he went to her, saying, ady, since the fortune of these men hath ıiven them their deserts, lay aside all fear, nd recover yourself under yon ash tree, till your page shall come up, and then we will go whither it shall please you : but the child was now far away, for not thinking the knight could conquer three, and finding himself at iberty, he set off to carry the news to a castle about three leagues distant, which belonged to the damsel's uncle. The damsel being confused with fear, was some while before she answered him ; but having somewhat recovered breath, she said, I owe to you so

much, sir knight, for having thus pres
my life, that I do not think you will
less care of my honour; let us go wher
please, for I know not at present wh
determine.

He took her bridle and led her to the
of which he had spoken, which was
pleasant one. They found a spring of w
in which he of the Savage, after takin
palfrey and unbridling his horse, washe
sweat and dust from his face. Then pl
his eyes on her, who as her fear abated
now recovered her colour, he became
enamoured that he had ever before l
for she was marvellous fair; and not wa
time in enquiring of her the cause of
wrong which had been offered her, b
about employing it on what he cared
about. Lady, said he, your beauty
power enough to subdue the world; I
not who could have the freedom to res
Those knights who were leading you
either had not seen you, or if they had,
fortune prevented them from regarding
for my happiness; but what avails n

or the succour which I have effected,
good will with which I undertook it,
y I am to see you at liberty, and my-
captive! you free, myself a yielded
r! and to take away all hope, I
hat the remedy of my life is in my
ror's hands, for my prison is not such
can by force of arms be broken. Do
ember what my deeds have been,
at they may deserve from you; but
ber the love which makes me speak
udge me by that, and favour me ac-
; to that, for it would not be right
e upon whom nature hath bestowed
y bounties, should have ingratitude
against them, a spot which sullieth
troyeth all virtues.

ght, replied the damsel, I know that
; among mortals is perfect, and this
ive by you, who being so excellent in
hat thereby you are worthy of every
would now by other vain passions dis-
your own worth. What glory can
to you from the great feat which you
st atchieved, if you would presently

destroy the merit of such an exploit by
fering violence to a weak damsel, des
ing her honour, and robbing her of her f
which in a short moment you can des
and never afterwards can restore? I
you who defend damsels from others, t
fend them from yourself, that your ac
may be of more praise before men, an
more merit before God. Lady, answ
he of the Savage, if you saw yourself,
would see my excuse! it is because yo
not see yourself that you conceive m
blame, for those eyes of yours can be pl
nowhere without robbing life and soul.
are passing fair, and besides that, I be
other graces in you, with the which
have robbed me of my liberty, and w
you not have me complain? You c
force that I beseech you to take compa
on me, and you do not perceive the
you do me, in holding my will captive, sc
I can only use it as your's pleases. If
reasons do not avail me, and have no e
upon you to remedy my misfortune,
your condition; kill me, and I shall
that a favour, now that all others fail

ay you knight, quoth the damsel, let
elieve that I have escaped one danger,
out falling into another; for while I
k of that I cannot be at rest. Your
ches I know are lavished, because you
lose nothing by them; and weak were
virtue which could be so overcome. Do
ersist in this, you weary yourself and you
ess me, and you will after all find your-
every time less pleased with my answer
1 you expect. Well then, lady, said he,
e my ill fortune makes you more ob-
ate than others, let us lose no more time,
mount again and be gone, for my heart
not endure to remain where it is so dis-
ned. If you were ugly I might have
ne it better, for I should have told you
ousand lies and have cared nothing when
I rejected them; but that you should be an
el in your appearance, and in your ac-
as the contrary, think what a life I shall
e while I remember this!

e damsel got upon her palfrey, tired of
s; for as she was virtuous, and virtue is in
elf firm, she held his words at nought.

And though she had thought his appearance was such that there should be truth in his words, yet she did not think she owed him any thing for that, for if the love with which he spake had merited a different requital, the dishonourable end at which it aimed, took away all its merit. So they took the road towards the place where he had left Arlanza; he of the Savage went courting her by all imaginable ways which desire could teach him; sometimes with words of transport, like a man so passionately enamoured that he knew not what he said; sometimes praising her, believing that the vanity of women is more easily caught thus than in any other way; sometimes adjusting himself in his seat, and curbing his horse to make him curvet and display himself in that manner, thinking that even these things with women, serve as a postern door which may sometimes be made use of. Finally, he endeavoured to set off his armour and apparel, putting on a chearful countenance, with looks as amorous as he could dispose them; but all availed nothing; for her discretion was so consorted with virtue, that she des-

ll this; this made him desperate, for
ıad he been so captivated by desire
, and he thought her a woman made
e; for not only were her words to the
ffect, but her actions also were con-
ıle to them. When they drew near
ınza, seeing that time cu. short his far-
ılk, he said to her, Since, lady, my
ıne is such, that you will refuse me
so greatly desire, tell me what you
have done with yourself. I neither
to know your name, nor where you
rom, nor whither you go; that I may
ɔw who hath won so great a victory
ıe. I will place you in safety, and
od send you happiness; I expect none
self so long as this remembrance lasts.
e replied, I shall remember while I
ıat I owe you, and be ready at all
to requite it, and serve you, in all
other than what you ask. For this
[would fain know your name, though
ill not ask mine; place me then in
· town, where I think I shall be safe.

is time they reached Arlanza, who

met them with great joy. The knight made her mount, and they advanced on their way, without telling the damsel his name; for being discontented with her, he was determined to refuse her what she wished. Having reached the town, the damsel remained there in the house of an aunt of hers; and he and Arlanza proceeded on; that night they past in the fields, where he of the Savage could not sleep*.

* This chapter is omitted by Anthony Munday.

CHAPTER 149.

e it was fairly day-light the knight of
ıvage made Arlanza and her compa-
mount, for the displeasure which he
ed for what had past with the damsel
ot let him sleep a wink. As they jour-
on, he talked less than he was wont
, for vexation to think how he had
baffled and with what contempt he had
treated, made him so saturnine that he
ıt appear like the same man; and as
ture he was gay and debonaire, it was
:hat something which he resented great-
l now prevailed above his natural con-
. Thus he went on, till when it was
ıur of vespers, he came into a forest
the city, where he espied a number of
ts, ladies, and damsels hawking, which

made him judge the emperor to be in their company, as he was indeed : for that day, to give some amusement to his old age, he had chosen to divert it with things for which it was no longer fit; and full of sorrowful thought for what time had taken from him, would go into the fields and see the sports in which he could no longer bear a part. He therefore, with the empress and the princesses who were then of his house, went in litters; and great was the joy of the lords and knights of his court, for as some of them wished to appear well in the eyes of their own ladies, and some in those of others; all and each of them did his best endeavour accordingly. When they saw the knight coming with five damsels in his company, they presently knew him, as well by the device upon his shield, as by the greatness of Arlanza, for it was known that she was with him; and whereas some among them had been making ready to joust and win the damsels, having lost that confidence, they all went in a troop to welcome and embrace him. He of the Savage, when he beheld this noble chivalry, and so many friends, and among them his

other Palmerin of England, laying aside
the sullen thoughts which had before ac-
mpanied him, alighted, and leading Ar-
iza's bridle, went up to the emperor's lit-
. There he kissed his hand, and besought
n to show honour and bounty to Arlanza,
to the person to whom he was beholden
the preservation of his life. Arlanza
mounted from her palfrey, and being ac-
npanied by her damsels, went up to the
ies, and her stature was such that her
id was on a level with theirs. The em-
ror embraced her with right courteous
l loving welcome, and with words which
atly contented her, and which were after-
rds fulfilled by deeds, to the increase of
state and honour. The empress and
idonia gave her the like welcome, think-
that thus they should please the knight
the Savage Man. The princess Polinarda
reated her with even more courtesy than
proffering her friendship, not with feign-
words but such as were full true, and had
ir cause in the desire she had to gratify
i of the Savage. Lionarda had less to
, as being a stranger in that house, not

for want of good will, knowing tha
means the knight of the Savage
living.

To the knight himself all welcoming
and honour was given, which his gre
ess could deserve, and their great
devise; but as amid this welcomi
told him of the death of king Fadr
lord and grandfather, this sorro
away from him all thoughts of joy
membrance how he had been bre
him, doubling that sorrow which f
ness of blood and true love he re
felt. Incontinently, taking leave of
peror, he retired into the city, w
was for some days visited by his
till time had abated his grief, and
him to return to the conversation
whom he loved. One thing he
which this affliction proved his frien
was, that the lady Lionarda sent to
with words which manifested that
took of his sorrow.

The emperor made Arlanza and he

mount; all eyes were upon her by reason
her appearance, for though she was not
ir, yet had she a cheerful countenance, and
ne so brightened up by natural goodness,
at it easily drew unto itself any free will or
eart which was not before captivated. He
ho most felt this was Dramuziando, who
ad arrived at court three days before her.
le, for nature will alway seek its like,
o sooner beheld Arlanza, than he became
devoted to her, that from that hour till
e last of his life, no wandering thought of
ve ever strayed from her; and this sudden
ssion was so manifest in his deportment,
at all those knights and queens and
incesses perceived the change.

s the emperor was about to return into
e city, he espied come riding along the
rest a company of ladies and damsels,
corted by certain armed knights. Before
could be known who they were, some of
e emperor's knights, being ambitious of ap-
aring well before those whom they served,
epared themselves for the joust. The chief
ong the others, albeit that his intention

had been to come in peace, yet being de sirous to try his valour before such an as sembly, took a strong lance, and clapping down the beaver of his helmet, went, befor he made his encounter, and presented him self to the lady who was the mistress of al that company. And having taken his leav of her, he gave his horse the spurs, and wa so fortunate in the encounter, as he sen Belisarte out of his saddle, a knight of gre estimation in that court, he himself nc being any way shaken in his seat.

Then taking a lance from one of the thr armed knights in his company, he overthre Austriano; and employing with like mann the other two lances of his companions, four encounters he overthrew four knight and though neither of them were of the famo ones of that court, yet was it judged that was one greatly to be feared for his prowe The emperor well pleased to see how brav he had broken these spears, sent for oth for him, but before they could be receiv a damsel came and saluted the emperor fr the knight, in this manner. Sir, Dragon

: Navarre, who hath jousted with
ights, saith, that inasmuch as he
)t that your highness and the empress
this company, he hath unawares
ito this fault and disrespect, as also
esirous to content Arnalta his queen
e; he will now joust no more, that
not lose what he hath gained, and
echeth your majesty to receive this
use, that he may the more freely
ır hand, since he hath come from far
is intent.

vas the contentment which the em-
and empress received, hearing the
's words; for Dragonalte deserved to
ived with as much honour and love
l be devised, being the son of such
r, and grandson to king Frisol: and
ıow a king and married to Arnalta, it
:cessary to welcome them with feasts
joicings, for Arnalta had not lost a
her vanity; so without any further
hey went to welcome them. Which
Dragonalte beheld, he alighted, tak-
is queen by the hand, in token of

greater reverence to the emperor and
press. The empress requited this court
for forgetful of her dignity and her age,
got off her palfrey, and with her, Grid
Polinarda, Lionarda, and all her ladies,
thus they all welcomed her with great
sure, telling her how the emperor's c
was highly honoured by her presence.
emperor spake to them from his li
by reason of his ill heath, but all the
that Arnalta remained on foot, he held
barret-cap in his hand, nor could her
treaties, nor all the remonstrances of
gonalte, prevail upon him to be cove
These embracings and compliments b
over, they remounted, and that no ceren
might be wanting, at the entrance of
city, Palmerin alighted, and taking the b
of Arnalta's horse, led it till he came to
palace, whereat the princess Polinarda sl
ed herself somewhat discontented; for
whatever pledges it may have rece
never lives in such security, nor so free
suspicion, but that any apprehension giv
pain. Arnalta seeing the respect with w
they treated her, was so elated that even

knew little of her, perceived her pride; with all this outward show of joy, she ıd something to alloy her pleasure; for ng Polinarda and the queen of Thrace ide her, their beauty secretly humbled , and she then began to think how un- t a quarrel they had enterprized for her e, who had maintained in Spain that she s the fairest woman in the world and the ıst worthy to be served. Nevertheless, ıugh these two had the advantage over r, she herself was the third for beauty in : emperor's court, and when Miraguarda me thither, she remained then the fourth. ıey were lodged in the palace near to the ıpress's apartments. Arlanza and her dam- ls were assigned as guests to the dutchess ' Tubaya, the chief lady about the em- :ess.

he emperor caused feasts and tournaments ıd dances in the palace, in honour of Ar- ılta's coming, at all which Dramuziando as present, being now so wholly devoted to is new love, as he could rest in no place, :ither enjoy any quietness. Palmerin, who

lived now in more content then he l
long time before, did not yet think all t
sound and sure, for that love pres
daily some occasions of fear to amorou
sons, until such time as their desires ar
fectly contented. He, that he might
means of seeing his lady, and enjoyin
contentment, took his place at all thes
next the queen of Thrace, who exp
him alway as being the friend of his
While this great joy continued, Pom
king of Scots, with his queen, arrived
emperor's court: they came by sea, and
was less preparation of sumptuous rece
for he being one of the house, was wele
with more love and less ceremony tha
nalta. Primaleon, to pay to Don Du
something of the debt of their old frien
would lead the queen of Scots, his dau
in-law's palfrey by the bridle, till she ca
the palace gate, notwithstanding the en
of Pompides and herself to the con
She was lodged with the princess Poli
who held herself greatly contented, be
she was so near in alliance to her m
voured friend. This reception was th

on on which the knight of the Savage
went abroad after the death of king
que his grandfather. Thus the court
onstantinople continued to fill with
, queens, and princes, at which the em-
was full well contented, for he delight-
such things, not regarding the cost of
easury, a thing which kings ought ne-
regard when it is expended on such
ions.

CHAPTER 150.

Now the emperor being full of days, have heard, and expecting his latte to be close at hand, he wished to ha comfort of leaving his grandsons m and also the princes and chief ladies w been brought up in his court, and present at the festivals upon this oc believing this would be the consu tion of all the things that were to h in his time. The better to put this ecution, he consulted with the empre Primaleon, by whose advice* he v

* The author had forgotten that all the pri already been sent for and were already arrived. C

Arnedos king of France, his son-in-law, beseeching him to come with the queen his wife to his court; for as his extreme age now every day threatened him, he wished to take his leave of them. In like manner he dispatched letters to Don Duardos, king of England, and Flerida his daughter; and to Recindos king of Spain, desiring him and his queen to bring Miraguarda in their company. The emperor Vernao, his son-in-law, was sent for likewise, and Tarnaes king of Lacedemonia, with his daughter Sidela, who in beauty and appearance was nothing inferior to many of those times; and the same compliment he paid to the soldan Belagriz, and to Mayortes the Great Khan. And as the emperor was generally honoured by them all as their lord, and loved as their father, as soon as they received his letters there was not one who did not make himself ready with the greatest haste in the world; the first that came to Constantinople, were the emperor Vernao, and Don Duardos, who were received with great love and little pageantry; for as Don Duardos and Flerida still were mourning for the death of the

king their father, they would suffer no public rejoicings, nor was any made at Basilia's reception, because they came together. Flerida and her husband were lodged in her own apartment, which still was called after her name, another adjoining unto it being given to the princess Polinarda and her guests. To tell the joy which the arrival of these princesses occasioned in that house may well be excused; they may conceive it who have children whom they greatly love, and whom at the close of their lives, they see in the great enjoyment of great estates and honours: soon after came the soldan Belagriz and Mayortes, their entertainment being as their noble estates deserved. Then came king Tarnaes with his queen, Sidela his daughter, and the infanta Paudricia, whom, being one little inclined to the mirthfulness and joy of the others, the empress, at the emperor's desire, took for her own guest. In this manner they came one after another, so that the court and the city were so ennobled, and so full, that they had never been so before. It was not long ere the two kings Arnedos and Recindos arrived.

r reason of their nearness of kin, and the eat friendship which had ever subsisted be- een them, Recindos had travelled by land France, and there embarked in the fleet hich Arnedos had prepared for both, which as a right noble one, and equipped as became eir royal person. They reached the port on bright and sun-shining day, which made the et appear more glorious, and they astonish- l the people with the sound of artillery and ums and trumpets which shook the very rth. The chief ships of the fleet were vered with rich canopies of silk and cloth gold, and the others with embroidered nings, set off with such gallant adorn- ents that they seemed to vie with the bro- de and purple of the others. Arnedos me in one ship with his queen and Flo- nda and Gratiamar his daughters, with nights for their guard. In another was ing Recindos and the queen, with their uard, and in a gallion which went foremost f the fleet, in greater bravery than all the st, came the fair Miraguarda, with the ant Almourol, Florendos, and many other ights; for king Recindos holding it for

certain that the emperor intended to n
her to Florendos, his grandson, and he
his empire, with king Arnedos's consen
do them the honour, caused their galli
sail foremost, as the captain over all the
vessels; with banner upon the main top
light in the poop, and thus they followe
into the port of Constantinople. Those e
knights who were not rich enow to
the ships in which they were embarked
costly canopies, sent boats on shore for
boughs wherewith they bowered ther
that in the whole fleet there was nothin
what wore the appearance of gaiety an
The emperor was so rejoiced at their co
that it seemed as if youth were again rev
in him; and refusing to go in his litte
would be carried in a chair to the
where they landed. The empress also
there, with all the queens, princesses
ladies of her house; Paudricia alone
not be present at the general joy.
rode on palfreys caparisoned with marv
costliness, yet those which were led f
newly arrived personages to mount, su
ed them in bravery of equipment. Th

eror sate in his chair at the water's edge, nd by him stood Primaleon, Don Duardos, he emperor Vernao, the soldan Belagriz, Mayortes the Great Khan, Tarnaes king of Lacedemonia, Polendos, Estrelante, Pompides, and Dragonalte, all kings, with a full noble chivalry besides of princes, infantes, nd famous knights, who by that mode of reverence and courtesy, gave more show of uthority to his royal person ; and no little oy it was to him in his aged years, to see nimself so beloved of the most puissant princes that were in the whole world; yea, he deemed the honour of this day to be the most triumphant that he had ever enjoyed, seeing that they displayed towards him the same ceremonious respect as though he had been their natural liege lord; but this joy was disturbed by the reflection, how short a time he could enjoy such honour, by reason of old age.

Arnedos, Recindos, and Florendos, being landed, would have kissed the emperor's hand, but he embracing them in his arms, would not suffer them, giving it to none but

Florendos; the same he did to the queens of Spain and of France, his daughters, after whom he received Miraguarda and all his grand-daughters with equal welcome, saying to Miraguarda, Right glad am I, lady, that you are now in a land, where I may requite the great courtesy I have found at your hands, in providing to detain Albayzar in so good security for my knights. Miraguarda made no other answer, but with a mild and princely courtesy, made show how well she understood the honour vouchsafed her by these words. Great labour would it be to attempt to recount minutely the compliments, ceremonies, and courtesies, which past at this reception: I will not make the attempt, both to excuse myself from this labour, and for fear also lest my words should debase that to which no words could do justice. It must not, however, be forgotten to say how the presence of Miraguarda among so many and so beautiful, astonished all with her beauty. Almourol came by her, and by his ugliness served to set off her charms. After Polinarda had welcomed and embraced her, she turned to her brother Florendos and

ıd, Now, Sir, I deem indeed that all the
rment which your affection hath given
u was worthily caused. Would, lady, he
plied, that I had the due recompence it
th deserved, so might I be in the better
surance. We are now in a place, she an-
ered, where we understand each other,
r is this the castle of Almourol, though the
'd himself is here, that the gates should
shut against you. Thus she sported, of-
ing to him at the same time her help and
ıt of her friend the queen of Thrace, to
ist him in his loves.

ıese ceremonies being over, which endured
ıg time, the emperor would return to the
lace, Primaleon leading the queen of
ain's horse by the bridle, albeit king Re-
ıdos was loth to suffer him. Polendos
l the same honour to the queen of France,
ı sister, and Don Duardos to Miraguarda,
well to content the aged emperor, as to
nour his kinsman Florendos: Palmerin
England did the like to the infanta Flo-
ıda, and Florian of the Desert to Gra-
mar; in brief, the princes and knights

all went on foot, save only the emp
who was carried in his chair upon t
shoulders, communing with Miraguar
the way, and being well pleased to see
well Florendos had bestowed his time
this manner, each accompanying his lac
her whom he most desired to honour,
reached the palace, where all these l
were lodged, as had for some time bee
pointed. The giant Dramuziando ha
mourol for his guest, by which mea
was held in the more account; for as
muziando was so greatly honoured in
house and court, when they beheld
honour he paid to Almourol, all dem
themselves towards him accordingly.
night there was no ball, that they
rest from the fatigue of the sea and
road; but the city blazed all night
bonfires, and rung with the rejoicin
the people, which seemed continually
crease; for they who do things with
will are never weary of doing them.

CHAPTER 151.

When the princes that were thus arrived at Constantinople had rested themselves for certain days, the emperor, desirous to content every one before he died, who had bestowed their service in honouring him, revealed his intent to Arnedos, Recindos, Primalcon, the soldan Belagriz, and others with whom it was meet to communicate upon such an occasion, telling them what a satisfaction and comfort it would be to his old age to see his grandsons married, and the other princes that had been nourished in his court. And then he said what he thought concerning each, and how it was right and reasonable that each should be matched according as his affection served him, having

regard to that rather than to any inequality of persons, if such there was, provided always that the advantage was on the damsel's side, as otherwise it would be to do her wrong. So it being determined among them what should be done, the emperor gave order that on the Sunday following, a sumptuous banquet should be provided in the Garden of Flerida, that being the place which was regarded with most affection of any in the palace, and where all great acts and ceremonies were wont to be performed.

The magnificence of the tables which were spread that day was worthy to be seen, especially the princesses' table, for there the flower of the world was assembled, and whoso placed his eyes upon them, might well have dispensed with all other delicacies. None could distinguish which had the advantage in beauty, save such as were enamoured, for Palmerin would not confess that any one equalled his lady; Florendos held the same opinion of Miraguarda; the knight of the Savage would have waged battle with all of them to maintain this for the queen of

Thrace; and Platir was not behind him in conceit towards his lady Sidela, daughter to king Tarnaes; each supposing that he had reason on his side. Among the elder beauties, Gridonia, Flerida, Francelina, and Basilia, Flerida bare the prize. After the tables were withdrawn, all being seated in due order, and in silence, the emperor would have addressed them in a speech, but as his voice was now weak, and it was necessary to speak loud that so large a circle might hear, he desired Don Duardos to say in his name what he meant to express. Don Duardos rose, and taking off his barret-cap, would have kissed his hand for this honour. Then turning towards the assembly, he placed his back against the trunk of a cypress, that he might the more conveniently be heard, and began thus:

High and mighty empress, whom most of us who are here present love and truly regard as our natural lady, some by the breeding which they have here received, others by relationship, owing unto you the obedience of that name, our lord the emperor, seeing

all these princes and lords collected in his house, and consulting whereby the renown of Christendom may most worthily be maintained, and all things continued in their flourishing estate, hath with the advice and counsel of all, come to that determination which I am now to declare. For as it remains to know whether your highness and these lady queens and princesses whom it concerns, are contented therewith, it hath pleased him that I should in the presence of all declare that, which would occasion long delay if related to each in particular. It is so that his majesty hath decreed, that these young knights shall join in marriage, in recompence of all their noble travails, with those to whom they are affectionate. And for them who have not to his knowledge made choice for themselves, he will look out according to their deserts, so that no offence shall grow on any side, but every one shall be contented to their own desires. Here he paused a while, either to take breath, or to think with what words he should continue his speech: there was not one in all that assembly whose heart was so free from fear,

enance so calm, but that something
ovements of affection might be dis-

For inasmuch as it is the nature
to be full of suspicions and fears,
ne thought that these marriages
ot be so justly and equally deter-
ut that peradventure he should fail
ing his right and desired guerdon.
n the ladies that this was most ma-
ny change being more easily dis-
n their more delicate complexions.
la, with her eyes on Palmerin, was
full of fear and shame, for she knew
that her grandfather might offer her
ier, and so it would be necessary for
avow what she had done. As for
n, though he had passed through so
angers, certes this was that which he
sented; and so greatly was he trou-
at if he had not leaned against a tree
ld have fallen to the ground. Pre-
Don Duardos continued: For you,
nd excellent prince Sir Florendos,
esty, with the consent of king Re-
appointeth the lady Miraguarda for

wife, believing, that free as her heart is, she will not be discontented with this, and that you will have your heart's desire accomplished. Whosoever had beheld them both when this was said, they might well perceive that these words had given him more joy than if the richest realm in the world were in his own possession; but in Miraguarda nothing could be discovered, her countenance remained so calm that none could tell whether she felt joy or displeasure.

And for thee, my son Palmerin, said Don Duardos, the emperor and prince Primaleon, in proof of the love they bear thee in this house, and in favour to me, do give thee to wife the lady Polinarda, not doubting but thou shalt imagine all thy passed travails to be fully recompensed in so sweet a reward. Certes Polinarda heard these words with other emotions than Miraguarda had done; it seemed as if her love was greater, and she could not conceal it; and Palmerin likewise now abandoned all his former fear, seeing he should enjoy the felicity he had so long desired.

ir Graciano, prince of France, con-
Don Duardos, the emperor believing
: thus confirms your own wishes, will
vith the lady Clarisia, his grandchild,
er to king Polendos. And you, brave
oldo, prince of Spain, with Onistalda,
er to duke Drapos of Normandy, and
hild to the renowned king Frisol,
t your father, I am sure, will be well
ted, thinking that you are so. You,
Francian, shall match with Bernarda,
er to Belcar. You, noble Platir, with
ncess Sidela, daughter to king Tar-
f Lacedemonia. You, Don Rosuel,
e inheritor of prince Belcar your fa-
ith the lady Dramaciana, daughter to
irendos. Belisarte, your brother, with
y Dionisia, daughter to the king of
:. You, Dramiante, with the lady
a, daughter to Ditreo, prince of
ry. And you, Frisol, who are heir to
e your father, with Leonida, daugh-
the duke of Pera. And that this
nt may be duly made, his majesty
the rest to be concluded upon with
vice and to the satisfaction of all.

But that it may not appear that you, Sir Dramuziando, are not remembered upon such an occasion, it is agreed that you shall marry the lady Arlanza, both to satisfy your affections, as is believed, and to repay her for her bewraying the treason of Alfernao; and your friend the knight of the Savage Man hath concluded to bestow the Profound Isle on you, which sometime belonged to her father Bravorante, as her dowry. Dramuziando did not wait to hear these words finished, but threw himself at the feet of the emperor and would have kissed them, for the love of Arlanza greatly tormented him. Don Duardos took him up, desiring him to have patience a little while; and turning to the queen of Thrace he said, To you, most excellent princess, whom nature hath so plentifully endowed with beauty and worldly blessings, the emperor, with these kings and noble lords in his company, not knowing how your inclinations lead you, do earnestly desire to give in marriage my son Florian, if this might content you and Palmerin, to whom it is said you are tied in some point of obedience, according as king Sardamante

ur grandfather appointed it in his will. lmerin, who all this while had kept him- f silent, humbly desired the king his father vouchsafe him a word or twain; which ing granted him, he came before the een of Thrace, and setting one of his ees to the ground, he said, I durst not, ause of the close relationship between us, sent you my brother Florian the first time a saw him, fearing lest you should think, it I was inclined more to regard his profit in your honour; and willing that you ght have some knowledge of his knightly eds, wherein if I perceived you to take y delight, I might be the bolder in pre- nting him for your husband, and you the sier to entertain him. Let it then, I pray ou, seem acceptable in your judgment, what e emperor and his council hath determined , in that I am persuaded the heavenly owers do think well it should be so. Sir almerin, said the princess, I am at your sposal, nor have I any choice or liking, it as you shall please; and if I should do herwise I were unworthy to receive the essing of the *king my* grandfather; and I

know not if my subjects would be satisfied with any thing contrary to your will. I am content with any thing which you imagine for the fulfilling of your promise and mine honour.

Palmerin arose glad of this answer, and Don Duardos, still more so, continued his discourse: Now, Sirs, that ye have all heard what has been proposed, it is the emperor's will you should reveal to him how you accept of his opinion; and the princesses and ladies shall bewray their intents to the empress, because his excellency would not enterprize any thing, but he will have all parties well contented therewith. But as these marriages seemed all to be ordained by Heaven, there was none but who was well pleased, and without delay it was known that all were well contented. Then each in turn advanced and kissed the hands of the emperor and empress, doing the like to Gridonia; and the like they did to the emperor Vernao, Basilia, and the other kings and queens there present; and the emperor embraced them every one, but when Palmerin

ne to him, he held him in his arms and
d, Son of my love, I have continually ima-
ıed with myself, how I might worthily re-
mpence your deeds, of so high estimation:
ıt now I persuade myself, that both my
sire and yours shall be sufficiently content-
, in giving you the thing which I love best
this world, which is my grandchild the
incess Polinarda. May it please God that
e same comfort which I have had with that
me in the empress your grandmother, may
end on ye also, that you and I bearing one
me, may be alike in happiness and good
tune. I never thought, said Palmerin,
at my deeds should purchase such a high
d happy felicity, as this which your ma-
ıty hath bestowed on me; but I see it is
ır goodness and not my deserts. Prima-
on and Gridonia embraced him with the
me love, they having long since determin-
l in their own minds upon this marriage.

hese things being past, the emperor, that
ıthing might be left undone, returned to
ınsel again, with the emperor Vernao,
on Duardos, Primaleon, and the other

kings, concerning what should be done with the infanta Paudricia; whereupon the soldan Belagriz was called, and in the presence of Don Duardos was reminded of what had passed, and told that the fruit of his deceit was Blandidon, so good a knight, and so worthy of estimation. Now as the soldan was already troubled in mind about the error of his faith, for by reason of his long intercourse with Christians he was certified of the truth of theirs, what with love for his son Blandidon, and compassion for the sorrowful life which Paudricia had led, and above all, being desirous not to lose the friendship of these princes, he renounced his law, and concluded to espouse Paudricia; and he had not much to do in converting some of his princes who came with him also, the love they bore him, and the sense of the error in which they lived prevailing; whereat the emperor greatly rejoiced, as indeed the business merited. Having left the council, the emperor, that there might be no time for Belagriz, by the persuasion of the people, to change this good mind, went to the house of the empress, taking Don Du-

rdos with him, where, they three only being present, Don Duardos discoursed to the infanta Paudricia the whole truth, undeceiving her of the opinion in which she and her son Blandidon had lived till now; and telling her how much he had endeavoured formerly to make the soldan renounce his false belief and accept her for his wife, to which, it being God's good pleasure, he had now consented. And praying her, since it had pleased God after so long time and so great sorrow, to bring him to a sense of his error, and give this good remedy to her affliction, that she would be content, as well considering the valour and riches of the soldan, who was a mighty and renowned prince, as also that her son might know his noble father. Paudricia heavily looking about her, was so sore troubled as it was a great while ere she spake a word; but after she had better remembered herself, she earnestly beheld Don Duardos, saying, My hard destiny concealed this so long, that I might endure to live; for be sure, if I had known this, I had given due chastisement to my ignorant misfortune. But since it is come to light at this time,

both the love of my son, and the salvation of the soldan and his subjects, compelleth me to forget all matters past, considered also, as you assure me, that the force of love which he bare towards me excuses him for this deceit.

The emperor liked well of that she had said, and the empress embraced her many times, being so glad as could be possible, that all things came to such a happy end, and so little looked for. Blandidon was then called and made acquainted with the truth, and though it grieved him to lose the opinion that Don Duardos was his father, yet the hope of the estate to which he should now attain, made him forget this grief, and entertain the change with joy; for this is the nature of rank, that it maketh those who aspire to it forget all other things.

CHAPTER 152.

After these marriages were thus agreed upon, he emperor, who would give no occasion for lelay to bring with it any obstacle, as often ime happeneth to those who are remiss in things of moment, commanded the day following, that all things for the solemnizing these honourable rites should be prepared, and that the ceremony should be performed in the palace, which was fitted up full royally for the nonce. The archbishop of Constantinople said mass; he was the patriarch of the whole empire, a person of great authority, and adorned with much learning and virtue; afterward he made a learned sermon, which was all in praise of the soldan Belagriz, whereby his holy and good intention was publicly made known, and the rightful

marriage between him and the infanta Paudricia, a thing whereof no one before had entertained a thought.

When the archbishop had concluded he baptised the soldan. The emperor and Don Duardos were his godfathers, and the two empresses of Greece and Allemaigne his godmothers. And to honour him the more, the emperor would have him be the first to receive the order of matrimony. This ceremony being performed, Blandidon humbled himself before him in sign of love and obedience, but the soldan giving him his hand and his blessing, took him up, rejoicing greatly in the fruit of his stolen embraces, that he had so good a knight to his son, and especially that he should leave to his subjects such a worthy governor. The infanta Paudricia came to their espousals between the two empresses, as her husband had done to his baptism. After them the emperor would have Florendos next in the espousals, to do more honour to Miraguarda, who advanced so proudly, and with so haughty and confident an air, as if in that ceremony she

had been the one who gained least. The yesterday, when all the other princesses had expressed their thanks to the emperor and empress for what had been settled concerning them, Miraguarda was the only one who offered no such acknowledgment, whereby she once more deprived Florendos of his due night's rest, making him conceit that she was not contented to have him for her husband, either by reason of some fault in him, or because she had another in her heart whom she affected more, and this was what he most feared. But now that the espousals were past, he was secure from all fear, and taking her by the hand, which was he thought the highest honour he could ever attain, Flerida and the queen, who before had had her between them, retired to their seats, leaving them both now contented and enamoured. Certes, that day where there were so many of such beauty present, Flerida was not less gazed at than all the others, though time and her long sorrow had impaired much of her beauty and appearance. Then came the fair princess Polinarda, led between her aunts the empress of Alle-

maigne and the queen of France, and
merin, accompanied with the emperor
nao, and king Tarnaes of Lacedem
And after them the queen of Thrac
tween the queen Francelina of Thessaly
Flerida, who that day accompanied so n
having been requested by all. She was
in marriage to the knight of the Sa
who if hitherto he had lived with sc
affections, remained from that time so
moured and wholly devoted to her, tl
seemed as if he were another man.
none marvel at this; it is the nature of
and matrimony to alter the conditi
men, and they in whom it is not alter
either of these, will remain the sam
death. Beroldo, Graciano, Platir, ar
the other princes and knights, were
espoused unto their ladies, each bein
companied by those whom he loved
Last of all, the queen of Thrace and pri
Polinarda, to do pleasure to the knig
the Savage, took Arlanza between the
strange sight, for in stature she was so
that from the breast upward she overt
them, and her limbs were of answerabl

ıd the features of her face alike pre-
ıable; they being fair and delicate
so that greater contrast could not
ɛen devised. Dramuziando came ac-
ıied by Primaleon and Don Duardos,
y were wedded to the equal content-
f both, he being enamoured of her,
ɛ won by his worth and fame. This
ɔver, which seemed to be the last,
arda besought the emperor that he
ɔe pleased to give to the giant Al-
Cardiga, for his wife, the daughter of
nt Bataru, who dwelt in her house-
or she knew that both desired it, and
lay was appointed to unite affections,
ot well that they should be forgotten;
ɔress declared that she had Cardiga's
, and so the marriage was performed
ɛ same solemnity as the rest.

Cardiga it is related in the second
this history, called Don Duardos of
ia, that the giant Almourol, besides
le wherein he alway dwelt and which
d after his own name, had another
ı league distant, down the Tagus,

which his father had built, and whic
called Torre Bella. But after his ma
Almourol gave it to Cardiga for her c
and called it by her name, and ther
past her widowhood, breeding up thei
who bore the same name as his fathe
that the old tradition is no fable, tl
former times Almourol and Cardiga
husband and wife, and that the castles v
in they dwelt were called after them
are so called to this day. Some chr
say that their son was named Tran
and that he was drowned one day cr
the Tagus below the castle of Almouro
whence that place was called the De
Tranconio, and in process of time, b
ruption, the Deeps of Trancos, from
the village, which in our days has bee
upon the shore there, is so called.
affirm that he was named Almourol li
father, and thus he is called in the c
cle of Don Duardos, wherein many n
actions are related of him during hi
life. But as this appertaineth not to o
tory, we will let pass the differences c
ters, and return to our own matter.

These marriages over, and the archbishop having given them all his blessing, they all repaired to the Garden of Flerida, where the feast had been made ready. He who should essay to describe the adornments and fashions wherein those princesses and ladies appeared that day, would have enough wherewith to fill paper; and though some may object that they could not be many, because of the shortness of the time, we answer, that they came provided, in hope of this occasion. One only cause of discontent was found amid all this joy,—that the infantas Florenda and Gratiamar should not share the same fortune as the rest; the reason was, that the knights who were their peers had fixed their affections elsewhere; and Germam of Orleans, who was known to be the servant of Florenda, was judged unequal in state, besides being vassal to her father king Arnedos. Nevertheless the emperor communed with Arnedos, and found him so well satisfied with the knightly prowess of Germam of Orleans, that it would not offend him to see his daughter matched with so valourous a vassal, the heir of so great a

house, and of his own also, if other s
fail; and being assured also that it
not displease the infanta Florenda, h
order that they should that same d
married. Gratiamar being more hat
hearted, and less easy to content, rem
without a husband.

They who had beheld the tables yest
would have thought them worthy to be
but to-day they were far more worthy
miration, being arranged after a dif
fashion. For in the former banque
ladies and princesses were in one part
the knights in another, but now they
all together. Who could have told F
dos two days before that he should sc
eat of the same dish with the fair Mirag
Palmerin with Polinarda, Platir with S
and each one with her whom he loved
Great changes do time and chance
and seeing that they thus teach us to b
fident, let every one learn, that even
very strength of misfortunes we oug
hope for some good, lest we fall into
despair, as thereby to destroy not onl

t our soul also, which God created
ferent end. Throughout the city
:e feasts and pageants of many in-
devised by a happy people who
ir king; and when a people are so
they are indefatigable in whatever
ght him. At this banquet, such were
:s of joy and contentment that the
ere little thought on; and in this
delight it was not observed that
'loraman was wanting. The em-
s the first who perceived this, and
iat he was not at any of the tables,
ired for him: one of the serving-
ied, that he was at the end of the
lying under a tree. Florendos his
:nt for him, for all well understood
iad retired from this scene of joy,
he could bear no part. After he
:avoured to persuade him to return,
i replied, Why, Sir Florendos, would
: him be a witness of others happi-
i hath for ever lost his own? My
p deserves not that you should give
rment. Leave me with my own re-
; my sorrow satisfies me; do not

wish me to behold what would doub
bringing to memory what I have lost b
sight of what others have gained. I
you the happiness which is your por
leave me my misery, and the content
which I find therein, my companions
I live, and till they shall put an end to
Some reasons Florendos offered to diss
him from this intent, and then leaving
he besought the emperor, who would
gone himself for him, not to do so, f
would be to give him pain, and als
make all who beheld him partake in
degree of his sorrow. This advice se
good to many, and to the emperor hi
who therefore let him be, with great
passion both in himself and in many otl
his friends; for as Floraman was a
prince, of good discourse, discreet, va
and well beloved, there was not one wh
not resent great part of his grief, and
his absence to be a great loss. The
was to know certainly that no counsel
monition which they could give would
any avail, his sorrow being so rooted in
and so inveterate, that he would not b

thing which called to his remem-
hat he had lost.

quet being ended, which lasted the
art of the day, what remained was
dances after the Grecian fashion,
ch they all retired. On the follow-
the brides and bridegrooms came
give thanks to the emperor and em-
cording as was the custom for all
re wedded in that house. The
who were not in this happy number,
dissemble their pain, or to give
to their friends, appointed tilts and
, which lasted many days, till they
aside by news of sorrow. Thus is
l composed, never so constant in its
ngs but that some evil follows, and
in, some recompence of good, with-
h hope I know not whether it could
ed.

Each of these princes delighting hi
with his sweet lady, for whose sake h
endured so many sharp travails, and of v
at times he had lost all hope, the others
still remained batchelors, either to give
tentment to their friends, or to dissemb
sorrow and envy which tormented t
selves, appointed feasts, tilts, tourneys
other inventions, wherein much time

greater sadness, and his horse and lance and lance-head of the same colour: by which sad habit, and by all his demeanour, he denoted, that the sight of happiness in others nothing abated of his own unhappiness, but rather freshened in him regret for what he had lost. For three days together, he was so great in arms and of such signal prowess, he remained victor against all that dealt with him. At length, because he would not discover his name to the judges of the field, Florian and Florendos went to arm themselves, being very desirous to try the combat with him. But Dramuziando prevented this, for he knew that it was Floraman. Don Duardos and Primaleon then went and brought him to the emperor, who essayed to comfort him, saying, that it was against reason he should afflict himself in such sort for the thing he could not remedy, seeing that by so doing he destroyed himself and distressed his friends, not one of whom, but for the love and affection which they all bore him, partook in great part of his affliction. And he besought him that if either in his house or out of it, there was in any kingdom

e province of christendom that thing which could induce him to forget his loss or compensate for it, that he would tell him so now, when all the greatest christian princes were there present, who would so willingly grant him whatever he desired. Sirs, replied Floraman, I well know, that neither words nor deeds of mine can sufficiently thank you for this favour and for the kindness which occasions it; but the true loyalty with which I from the first began to serve my lady Altea, hath not so little force as to let me change this mind. I know, indeed, that she is dead, that my evil fortune hath occasioned this, and that nothing which I can do, and no excess of passion in me, can bring her to life again:—if it could she would then be less beholden to me, for then any sorrow would be for my own interest, and not for her worth. I rejoice in my wretchedness, since it is for her that I endure it. And if there where she now is, she hath any perception of what passeth here, she knows, that if at any time my fancy represents to me that I grieve in vain, that thought do I cast from me as disloyal, and utterly renounce it, admit-

ing none but such as teach me to be content ith the evils which I endure. For the love of hose who love truly must be without reserve; here it began there true love ought to remain to the end, and in the end, otherwise t is to be judged but light and inconstant. am contented with my sufferings: so long ave they now been my companions that I ould not live without them, and whoever inks that by withdrawing me from these oughts he should befriend me or do me easure, offendeth against me in a way that have not deserved. If your highness deireth to manifest your goodness towards me, ave me with my thoughts;—there are none n this world which can turn me from them.

They saw he was so firm in this resolution, hat they judged it would be losing words to trive with him in longer persuasions; so he ook leave of the emperor, and accompanied vith Don Duardos and Primaleon, went to is chamber. The life of this prince, and the nanner of his love, gave great pain to his riends, for he was well beloved, and among he ladies he was greatly esteemed, for they

saw in him more truth and love than in
men. Some who knew him little, judg
times that his shew of sorrow was but
terfeit, and that inwardly it was not wh
made it appear; but they wronged him
he was truly as enamoured, and as w
devoted to his passion, as he could have
when Altea was living. In the compa
men, though at times he appeared che
or less sad, it might presently be seen
the recollection of what he had lost
across him, how he lost all thought of
he was saying, and his words wandered
it was apparent that his mind was
them, but fixed upon the thing which
grieved him. If in the field or in the
he was for a moment unemployed, it wa
in thoughts of his love, and forgetfu
peradventure some one might overhear
he would talk to his lady, as though she
present, till he was weary. At
he would compose virelays to her, and
love-letters, as though she were one to
he could send them; then recollecting
self he would tear them, fearing tha
mark of his wandering imagination s

e seen. But leave we now to speak of Floaman.

The rejoicings in the city beginning to abate, the emperor was sometimes wont, accompanied with all the nobles of his court, to go in his litter a-field, with falcons, merlins, and other birds of the like nature. One Sunday it came to pass in the Forest of the Clear Fountain whither the emperor went to dine, the day being bright and clear, the knights pursuing their sports in divers parts of the wood, the emperor and empress, with the other ladies and princesses remaining in the company of some few; as the princess Ponarda, the queen of Thrace, Miraguarda, Fidela, and queen Arnalta, were disporting under the shade of the trees, suddenly the day was overcast, and a cloud came down and covered them; it presently rose again and dispersed, and then they saw in the air two griffins of marvellous bigness, who were carrying away the queen of Thrace upon their wings, leaving all the others. She, tearing her tire and her beautiful hair, filled the air with her cries, and in this manner past

over the heads of those who were hawl
being seen and known by them. Great
the dismay which this sight occasione
the emperor, and in all who beheld it.
princes and knights forsaking their s
rode to the forest, where they found so
and lamentations, and seeing that they c
neither give counsel nor remedy in so str
a case, they made the emperor return,
posing the next day to go in quest o
queen, and return to their old laborious
of life. But the sage Daliarte prevented
saying that this adventure appertaine
none but the knight of the Savage; and
the others should remain, for a greater
ger awaited them. Soon did the tru
these words appear, for in two days ti
came that the fleet of Albayzar and
Turks was departed to come against
stantinople. This news detained all the
kings and princes, who were else abo
return into their own dominions; for
would not leave the emperor in this da
He of the Savage, full of love for the c
his wife, and thinking nothing of this
as if it concerned not him clad in his

and bearing his wonted device, set
diately, full sorrowful for this ad-
and not knowing how it could

CHAPTER 154.

The history relates that the knight of the Savage Man, weary of searching the whole empire over from one end to the other, in which he expended much time, and being almost desperate of succeeding in his quest, had now his spirits so dead, and his heart so sorrowful, that it seemed any little danger would now have been too much for him; and in this state of despair, wandering about without hope, he uttered such amorous complaints as were unlike his former condition, and one whose will had for so great a part of his life been so unrestrained. But as Fortune was now weary of tormenting him, she let him at last discover the place where *his* lady was, that this might certainly the

better enable him to endure what he had yet to undergo.

One evening, as he was travelling in that part of the empire where it bordered upon the kingdom of Macedonia, at the foot of a lofty and craggy Sierra, the sun was overclouded and the heavens overcast with such darkness as if it were night; and so heavy a rain began to pour down, that he expected to be lost: for he was far from any inhabited place, and neither he nor his squire knew the country, so that they were without any remedy. Presently they heard the cries of a woman, whose voice seemed to come through the thickness of the air, and groans with them, as of one who was suffering some wrong; or which the desperate weather and the place, far from all shelter, occasioned her to utter. Now though he had need of all his strength to save himself, yet was he so accustomed never to be near danger without hastening towards it, especially when a woman cried for succour, that, forgetful of every thing else, he turned his horse towards the place from whence the cries seemed to

proceed, which was nearer the top of the Sierra, where there was a rock of immeasurable height, and as steep as possible. As he drew nearer, he thought the voice came from the rock; and in this he was confirmed when he saw an opening in it, like a gateway, hewn in the rock, through which a man on horseback might enter. Let not the reader marvel at this, whereof it will be needful to make farther mention, because of what was within; for this place had for long time been the abode of famous enchanters, who succeeded each other; that great enchantress the infanta Melia*, was the founder, and at this time Drusia Velona dwelt there, of whom the next chapter will speak, and they who inhabited it knew how to conceal it so that it should be visible to none but those whom they wished to see it. Neither should any one think it strange to hear that Melia founded it, because it is said in another part of this book, that she had another similar place in England, where-

* The rival enchantress of Urganda in Esplandian.

in she dwelt also; for this infanta being the most excellent in her art of her own times, and indeed more so than all before or after her, as in those days her brother king Armato of Persia had Esplandian the emperor of Constantinople, and Amadis king of Great Britain, for his capital enemies, she sought in all these parts for the most convenient places which her cunning could discover, to make her dwelling in secret, that she might come there whenever it was necessary for her to practice her enchantments. For this reason she had one in England, of which she made less use, and on which therefore less work had been bestowed. She had another in Greece, far more excellent in its fabric and fashion, because she spent great part of her life there. Another, to which she was most affected, and which she made her principal dwelling place, was in Persia, which was her native country, and this in its fabric, greatness, and artifice, exceeded all the rest. If this infanta had been enamoured as Urganda was, it might have been that this her chief abode would in gallant devices to delight the eye, have surpassed that which

Urganda made in her island, now Daliarte but as Melia's inclinations were far ave from love, her works were of other char ter.

To return then to the subject, from whi have wandered a little, he of the Savage whose heart fear never harboured to prev him from using his good courage, determ ed to enter this cavern, and turning ro with intent to leave his horse with his squ and bid him await him in that place, could not see him, and not finding him, thought the darkness and the storm had parated them. This was not the cause, Daliarte had done it, who did not cl that this place should be visible to l The knight was grieved at this loss, knowing what might have become of h nevertheless he entered the cave, and farther he went in, the nearer the c sounded. So as the horse, frightened the place, or by the darkness, would g farther, he leaped off, and went on, sw in hand, afoot. He had not gone far fore the cries which he had before he

ceased altogether, whereat he was greatly grieved, believing that either the person who uttered them was dead, or had suffered the injury, the fear of which occasioned these shrieks. Then quickening his pace, it was not long before he found himself on the other side of the Sierra, in a great square field, surrounded on all sides by other such rocks as that through the which he had entered, which were on the outside so steep and rugged, and composed of such crags and precipices, that even if they had not by art magic been concealed, they were so constructed by nature, that it would have been impossible for any human being to have ascended them in any part to discover what lay beyond. The field within was covered with goodly plants of divers colours, and there were trees there, and fountains of clear water. And the rocks on all sides were hollow, with portals hewn in them, excellently wrought, through which was the entrance into the apartments of Melia. Now though this habitation was not bedecked with gold nor with other ac-

customed gallantries, its composition, for one who could understand it, was full wonderful. For having halls and chambers and corredores of all sizes, all were cut in the solid rock; and what was most to be admired, was the wonderful loftiness of the apartments, for none could by any subtilty of imagination devise how so great and singular a work could have been compassed by the wit and power of man. To the knight of the Savage this place appeared the most notable thing that ever nature or time could bring to light, and he marvelled that a thing so wonderful should not be more known and more talked of in the world. And entering in he went through all the sides of the edifice, for in every chamber there was much to behold; the light came from windows in the summit, cut in the top of the rock. All these chambers communicated one with the other; and in none of the portals did he find any gate or door to impede the entrance, excepting only one, which in this respect differed from the others. This was fastened with two great and strong locks, and the door also was of solid iron, and wrought all

over with ancient histories which he of the Savage did not understand, neither did he tarry long in endeavouring to enter, seeing the strength of the door. Proceeding farther, at the end of the last side he came into a hall, which seemed to him in greatness and loftiness and workmanship to exceed all the others; there he saw opposite the entrance the statue of an ancient woman, whom he judged to have been the founder of this palace. Round about her were other statues in marble, the history of which he did not know, neither did he stand long to behold them, there being something else which more astonished him. For in the middle of that room was a serpent of metal, of singular workmanship, and so huge that it well nigh filled the whole length of the hall. It was standing upon its feet, its neck stretched out, the fashions of its head so like the life, and the look so fierce and terrible that though it was manifestly a thing artificial, yet might it have excited fear in any one who beheld it.

The knight went up to it, and viewed it all round; when he came in front he stopt

longer, for there was more to see
He perceived a golden key hanging
its neck by a fine thread of gold, t
being so small that it was scarcely
He took it off, well judging that it
needs be of some use, but neither i
apartment, nor in all the others which
traversed, had he seen any place to wh
could be applied. Then returning
spect the serpent more narrowly, to se
could find any thing there which th
would fit, at last, on the one side, und
scales wherewith it was covered, h
covered a little opening, which gav
hope that the key would fit it. And
it he found that this was the place for
it was made; so turning it round, and
ing it towards him, he opened a litt
about the bigness of a hand, through
he could see all that there was in the

ast, and the other two to the west, and
ing with a marvellous splendant bright-
yet the wax did not diminish any thing
. Between these four lights was couch-
on rich cushions, and with a pillow of
1 silk under her head, the fair Lionarda
n of Thrace, his wife, in all her beauty
erfection, save only that the brightness
e light did something pale her. At this
the knight of the Savage Man stood
le like one whose reason was disturbed,
knowing whether he might give credit
hat was before his eyes or no.

looking again and again, and satisfying
elf that what he saw was no phantasy,
new that it was certainly she, and of this
is the more assured by her apparel, know-
t to be the very same she had on when
was carried away in the forest. And
g thus fully persuaded that it was she,
alled aloud to her, but his voice had no
power that it could break the order of
sleep. At this being seized with de-
r, and full of love which he bore her, he
aimed, What glory or contentment can

my victories yield me, and the manifol
ous adventures which I have happily
ed what do they avail, if Fortune n
sake me in this, whereon my life
eth. O lady! since my unhappy fort
prived me of you, I have travelled ov
countries to find you out, and now
the very time when I was out of a
here I am come, where for my wo
row I see you, and know not how t
you. You do not hear me! My w
wasted upon the wind! and I am de
This love being converted into an
seeing himself so near his lady, and
able to come nearer, he took his swo
with the hilt thereof began to ba
serpent, thinking to demolish it, but
in vain, for the composition of it wa
a quality to be so destroyed. Instea
came covered with bright flames.

d made, and still more so with trouble
ad, he threw himself upon the ground
his face to the earth, cursing his for-
because in all other adventures it had
shown him some means to extricate
lf, either by fine force, or cunning, or the
f another; but in this which concerned
nore than all, all remedy was cut off,
e was left in utter despair, without any
or shadow of hope, to comfort and sup-
im. And as men whose hearts have
ong free, when they devote them at
e more devoted than such as have been
o such devotement, so it was with this
t, he being now so passionately afflict-
nat his judgment and reason clearly
oned him, and he determined to re-
there in that strange dwelling place
: his lady, not remembering that he
o other food there than his own ima-
ons, which would sooner destroy than
rt him.

t this time his true friend Daliarte, who
l not forsake him in so great necessity,
ed the hall, attired after the English

manner, as a gentleman without arm
having had leisure to arm himself in the
with which he came. He came in, s
It is plain, Sir Knight, that you do n
member me, since in time of such diff
you distrusted my services; which are
needful here than at any other time.
the Savage rose and took him in his
holding his appearance to be as a divin
ccur. Sir brother, said he, one occas
grief thoroughly settled in the mind, c
the party so vexed to commit all thing
to forgetfulness; blame me not, ther
though you were not in my remembra
being in such a sharp extremity. Bu
that I have you here with me, Fortur
do me no farther hurt. I beseech y
you see my trouble, help me in it.

Sir, quoth Daliarte, the person who
made this enchantment of the lady Lio
hath not chosen that it should so eas
broken. But Fortune reserving you t
ploy your valour in adventures worthy
high renown, will not suffer that intent
fully executed, having ordained that

should discover the end; nevertheless, y art is not sufficient wholly to effect isenchantment, your courage as well as kill will be needed.

n he had thus said, he bade him shut oor, and hang the key again round the of the serpent; but they stood first e looking at the manner in which Lio- a was laid there. He of the Savage d fain have devised some means to ex- ish the candles, because they made his lose some part of her colour and natural y. It is plain, said Daliarte, that you rstand less of these things than the one made them; for by the virtue of their is the life of Lionarda sustained; and fore it is that they burn without con- ng, for so soon as the substance of which are composed should be consumed, ife would be expended also.

with they went out of the hall; and so as they were come into the open field, air began to be exceedingly troubled, a marvellous darkness overshadowed

them; it soon cleared again, and the knigh
of the Savage Man found himself alon
without the sage Daliarte to direct and hel
him, and close by him a bull of marvellou
bigness and fierceness, who ran at him, an
as he thought tost him with such force as t
send him as high as the top of the rock
but in his fall he lighted upon the neck
the bull, and was carried by him into a da
and dismal cave, at the end of which was
great court of goodly workmanship, whe
he left him and vanished away. The knig
of the Savage, though something astonish
at all this, feared little any such adventu
that might befal him, for he plainly pe
ceived that they were phantastic and vai
And looking round about the court, he s
that it was full of the statues of famous me
who, in the days of Amadis and Esplandia
had flourished among the Moors; and it
joiced him to behold so notable an antiqui
and things so worthy of remembrance.
the most honourable place of all stood A
mato the king of the Persians, having
crown upon his head, and letters of gold
his left thigh, which declared his name,

the knight of the Savage Man ear-
beheld these images, there came in
woman, so wrinkled and feeble with
nity of age, as she seemed scarcely
o stand upon her feet; she, feigning
ne was astonished at seeing him there,
the place with loud and mighty cries,
; upon the statues to defend her against
ntruder that was come to violate her
. At this cry the images began to
nemselves, and to lay hold on their
s; but when the knight of the Savage
made offer to defend himself, they
silent in their former estate, and the
oman vanished out of sight. He of
avage went then to return to the hall
the serpent stood; but on his way
gh the apartments he saw the same
oman standing against the iron door,
with her strength she would have de-
d it against him, whereby he knew
in that place was inclosed the remedy
travails; and thinking it not fit to at-
her, because he would not lay hands on
nan, he stood awhile not knowing what
o. The old woman, as if her fear of

him was such that she did not dare await his determination, put her shoulders against the iron door, and thrust so mightily that the strong locks gave way as if they had been of wax, and she went in and closed it after her. And the knight stood laughing, seeing that the weakness of this old woman, which seemed as if it needed one to support her, had thus discovered the greatest force in the world. Then coming up to the door, he laid hands on it, but it seemed as if one within held it to against him. He persisted in forcing it open, and then she drew back and received him within, having with her four knights clad in costly armour, to whom she complained of him, how he sought to destroy her ancient palace. These four knights lifted up the maces which they held in their hands, as if all meant to strike him at once; but when the knight of the Savage Man prepared to defend himself, both they and the old woman vanished away incontinent.

And then seeing himself rid of these obstacles, he stood looking round the apartment, which seemed to him well worthy to

be seen. In the midst of the hall there was a candlestick of gold, set on a brazen pillar, and in the candlestick burned a white wax taper, so slender and fine that but for the light which it yielded it would not have been visible: he well judged that this was not without some mystery, but he knew not what to do, seeing no way to deliver his lady. The apartment had cupboards all round it of carved wood, each having its lock and the key thereof therein; in some he found part of the library of the infanta Melia, in others garments and coifs, adorned with jewelry which was beyond all price, all being woman's apparel. They say that the infanta Melia made them for her niece, the daughter of king Armato, who died just when her marriage had been concluded on; and the apparel was of the fashion of those times. This was known, for it was found written in a book in that same library, which treated of her life; and Melia in her grief for this niece's death, would not that any other, as long as the world lasted, should enjoy what had been made for her; and with this intent had deposited in the palace so

great a treasure of jewels as had
bestowed, and all this wardrobe
times. Well might these riches
tented any one, how covetous s
they gave no joy to the knight of
Man, for the treasure which he
recover was still as it was befo
knew not how to recover it.

While he was in this state of t
great sage Daliarte came to him
ing with a cheerful countenance,
Knight, since you have done
was ordained for you, refer the
for in despight of the person that
vent it, I will recover her whom
dearly. I know well, answered
of the Savage Man, that you al
medy my distress; and if I sh
otherwise, I were unworthy to
furtherance in this my extreme t

CHAPTER 155.

fore the sage Daliarte would deliver the :en of Thrace out of the enchantment, he uld see the palace, and though the trea- es therein were well worthy to be esteem- the library appeared to him of far greater imation, and with the consent of the ight of the Savage, he made conveyance all the books, by his art, into the Perilous e, where he placed them with the books the sage Urganda, of which somewhat th been discoursed to you already ; the ier things remaining for him of the Savage, him who by his labours had won and de- rved them. This just and reasonable par- ion being made between them as brothers, aliarte took from the pillar the taper ich was burning in the candlestick of

gold, and when he had it in his han
to the knight of the Savage, The life
lady Lionarda consisteth only in the
of this light, and till we had acqui
you might well be unhappy ; but no
ther the power of Targiana, by whose
this enchantment was done, nor the
the great Drusia Velona, who did it
prevent us from effecting our desir
you shall rest from the sorrow and
which you have undergone. Then l
that chamber, they returned to that w
the serpent stood ; Daliarte holding
hand the fatal candle, and in the
little book, with black leather covers,
he had found upon the pillar, und
candlestick wherein the candle was b
Then he bade the knight of the Savag
again the little door in the side of tl

out all at one instant, the life of the queen of Thrace had been destroyed; for they were framed by such art, as she sweetly slumbered in life by the virtue of their light, and was thereby sustained in the same state as when she entered there, suffering no natural decay. So soon as one of these tapers had lost its light, Daliarte lighted it again with the candle in his own hand, in which consisted a contrary mean to help their purpose; for that not only preserved her life, but broke the spell of sleep, so that after all the tapers had been extinct and lighted again, the queen awoke, as if from an ordinary repose. But seeing herself in such a place, and with such things about her, and her own knight of the Savage looking at her through that little door, and with tears of joy addressing her as one whom he had not for long time seen, she had then more to think of and to wonder at, doubting whether what she saw were not a dream, and having no remembrance how she had been rapt away in the forest of the Clear Fountain; for in that same instant her judgment was

taken from her, so that she could not r
member any thing. Daliarte seeing her
this amazement, told her all her adventur
and of the time which had elapsed since sl
was carried away from amidst her frien
and brought thither, which was now mo
than half a year, and of the great sorr
which there was in the court of Constanti
ople for her loss, and for that of the knig
of the Savage Man also, of whom nothing w
known then, he having departed the sa
day in search of her. The more the que
heard the greater was her wonder and t
fear; for she weened that whoever had plac
her in that state of enchantment, did r
mean that she should so soon be delive
out of it. He of the Savage, who could r
endure to see his lady shut up so long in t
serpent, besought Daliarte to finish the c
enchantment, and relieve him from his s
row, and her from her fears. I know,
plied Daliarte, your heart cannot brook t
delay, but before we make an end of
I wished to encourage the lady que
that she may better endure the fear wh

'et to come, for to you I know it will be
e. Without farther delay he put the
lle which he held in his hand into one of
nostrils of the serpent. Such effect it
ight, that darting flames from its mouth
eyes, it rose upright upon its feet, giving
or three such bounds, that at every one
:med as if the whole hall would have
shaken to pieces. The queen, over-
:red with terror, became a second time
:less: and he of the Savage in like man-
unable to endure his fears for her, em-
:d Daliarte, beseeching him to save her.
irte approached to the serpent, and
ng his hand in at the little door, he
ched the tapers, which being done, the
nt burst open on one side, for the
gth of its composition consisted in the
gth of the fire. When he of the Savage
ll their fears at an end, and his lady
enseless, he began afresh to intreat his
er, that he would restore his queen and
it is not to be said how well pleased
ige Daliarte was, seeing him so earnest-
'ected to her, and remembering the
estimation he was wont to make of

women; and how he was wont mock at those who yielded to them; then he despised love, now as a vassal he served him in all things, confessing that none but the ignorant would live free from his yoke. Daliarte having pity upon him, opened the book again in which he had read before, and presently the queen recovered, and seeing herself now where she could reach the knight of the Savage, she threw her arms around his neck, and clung to him, as if there to secure herself from the fears and dangers which she had endured; and he, when he held her there, thought that he could defend her against the whole world and that neither force of man, nor art o man, could ever again bereave him of her and in this joy they regarded all their sorrow as things which were past.

He and Daliarte then proceeded to shew he the wonders of the place, the sight whereo she could willingly have excused, not hav ing courage to remain there. When the came into the chamber where the pillar was and the library of Melia, seeing the appare there of such rare fashions, and so grea

costliness, she thought that this would recompence her for her past injuries, and wished to adorn herself with them, to show herself to her friends; and this thought made her long more to be among them, than the regret with which she remembered them, though that was great. This was nothing strange; the nature of women is that they should be composed of so much vanity, that they would give their lives and souls to obtain any thing by which they could provoke others to envy; and so strong is this passion in them that nothing can equal it. Even this queen, all excellent and quiet-hearted as she was, seeing those things before her, which were the richest she had ever beheld, longed to be attired in them, more for the sake of appearing better than the other princesses, than of appearing well. Daliarte told her, she might put on whatever she chose, but that she could make use of nothing more, the time not permitting it; one was to be born of her, who in beauty would exceed all of her times, and she would possess them with sovereign delight, and in

greater dominion than ever any one had yet enjoyed.

Then Daliarte took his leave, saying that as they must needs travel more leisurely than he, he would forthwith go to Constantinople, where he knew that his presence was greatly needed to remedy some things which could not be remedied by force of arms; and he exhorted him of the Savage to make as little tarriance as might be, as well to relieve the emperor from the careful thoughts which he would needs endure till his return, as also to succour his friends in the present danger. Before Daliarte departed, by his art he transported all the treasures of that palace to his own island, where they were afterwards made use of in the days whereof he prophesied; and inasmuch as that which the queen put on will be described hereafter, it is not spoken of here.

But to let you understand by what occasion the queen of Thrace was thus enchanted, it is written in the chronicles of the Great Turk, that the princess Targiana, though she

was married at this time to Albayzar, soldan of Babylon, and she herself lady of all his dominions, and to crown all, lady of him himself (women being the mistresses when they are passionately loved by their husbands, some of whom therefore ought to keep a tight rein, seeing the unreasonable liberty which they assume where this is the case;) all this dominion, and the prospect she had of every day coming to the inheritance of her father's kingdom, was not sufficient to make her forget her anger and heavy displeasure towards the knight of the Savage Man. This hatred allowed her no rest, and it was doubled in her, when she heard how he was king of Thrace, and married with Lionarda, who in rank and beauty was nothing inferior to any princess of her times. Now as in women the desire of vengeance is always more keen than in any other persons, and she despaired to find any one who could satisfy it by force of arms, she bethought herself how to take revenge by some other way; and being informed that at the farther end of the dominions of the soldan of Persia, there was a great enchantress of the same race as the

soldans themselves, by name Drusia Ve
she wished to see her. But she knev
how to compass this, and while she w
this perplexity, and still daily thirstin
desiring for revengement, the enchar
herself, who by her art knew every t
relieved her by coming to her; for on
when Targiana was bathing at noon
came down through the top of a high t
Terrified at this sudden appearance sh
about to cry out, and call her women
Drusia Velona made herself known. So
was her joy then, seeing this wish ac
plished, that she manifested it with v
and courtesies little needed by the en
tress, and kept her with her for some
entertaining her with all things whicl
thought might yield her contentment
told her the desire of her heart, and
greatly it tormented her, beseeching l
give her some revengement by her
Velona told her she knew all, for no
was hidden from her, and she would s
her. I have well pondered the matte
said, and have devised the means to r
your over-charged and troubled thou

asily might we be revenged on the knight f the Savage Man, if it were not for the age Daliarte, who would protect him against ne; nevertheless, I have found out a practice, vhich Daliarte little thinks of, and which vill afflict him of the Savage more than any hing which could be done to his own per- ion. In v hatever manner he can be injured, said Targiana, I shall be contented; it is the only thing I desire, to be revenged on him by any way whatsoever. You know, said Drusia Velona, that he is but slenderly affected to them, who notwithstanding love him with most especial good will; yet is he so amorous of the queen of Thrace his wife, as it is not possible for any man to be more. I will convey her into such a secret place, that long time shall be necessary to find out where she is; and though Daliarte should find her, let not that trouble you, for before she can be released, the empire, which the knight of the Savage should have succoured, shall be all spoiled and brought to confusion, and thus shall you be satisfied. Great was the joy which Targiana received at these words, holding their accomplishment to be certain.

Velona went to work, and having enchanted the queen after the manner which you have heard, she returned to Targiana, whom she conducted by her art to the place where Lionarda was enchanted, and let her see her. Targiana being now accustomed to the works of Drusia Velona, was able without fear to survey all the wonders of that palace, and when she beheld the beauty of the queen of Thrace, well understood that one who loved her would never rest without her: and the pain which she resented at the manifest vantage of Lionarda's beauty, abated something of the pleasure she felt at seeing her in this state; so she besought Velona to close the enchantment, and fasten the little door through which they beheld her. Drusia did so, and hung the key round the serpent's neck; then conveying Targiana back, she herself returned to Persia, not being so confident that Lionarda could not be released as she had expressed herself; and yet certain that Daliarte would have much to do before he could discover the manner of the enchantment. There the queen of Thrace remained enchanted till the knight of the

Savage by his valour, and Daliarte by his art, released her, as ye have heard. Here leave we to speak of them till fitter occasion, and relate the state of the court, and how the great force of the enemies came up against Constantinople, whither he of the Savage was repairing, his presence being full needful there.

CHAPTER 156.

It is rehearsed in the chronicle of the peror Palmerin, how after the triumphs sports for the marriages were somewhat blown and past, some of the elder princes minded to return to their own homes after youth is past, manhood is conte with nothing but those things to whi hath habituated itself. For this re though Don Duardos, and Recindos, Arnedos, and Tarnaes, and Polendos, Belcar, had been marvellously fond o remonies, and had past in them good pa their lives, as is written in the book of Pr leon, yet now, when age began to weig on them, and they were occupied wit *cares* of governing their kingdoms,

ssed these things with less pleasure than
ıe young men whom the novelty of such
s delighted, and their time of life en-
to be delighted. For this reason there-
ıaving determined to depart, they were
to put their determination in effect, if
ne, which had reserved them for dif-
end, had not prevented. For at this
Targiana gave intelligence to the court,
damsel whom she sent thither, of the
erable fleet of ships, the great power
n, and the terrible giants and famous
ts who were now collected together in
ort of Armintia, for the destruction of
antinople and its defenders. The ar-
was fully equipped, and waited only
vind. And though many great princes
therein, Albayzar was by consent of
ointed captain general, with sovereign
s, as he who in arms and in dominion
ıe vantage over all, and in his hatred
cause for the war than all the others.

on as this news spread through the
great was the stir and tumult in all
ıs. The young, who were desirous of

glory, received it with great joy and
acclamations; the old, who thought the
which they had acquired in youth r
have excused them now from new lat
were loth that their repose should be
turbed; and they had to consider als
weight of this great business, and with
loss and how many deaths could so m
an armament be resisted. Among the
ple there was fear and alarm; for if Fc
should prove against them, they look
the waste of their substance, and th
solation of their houses. The emper
whose good fortune his subjects had
trusted, was at this time so worn ou
course of nature, that he had now lo
use of all his limbs, and could no
from his bed, only his judgment was
times clear, with the which to give
counsel.

Primaleon was by nature warlike and
valiant, and he was not sorry that thi
ger had happened when he had so n
company assembled together, whom
wise it would not have been easy to ha

:ted in time. And with great prudence he gan to look to the fortifications of the city, d called upon all his vassals. The stir was general that no person remained still; me provided arms, other surcoats and gal-ıtries, each according to what his age and ndition required. The kings and princes ıo were in the court dispatched couriers their own dominions, ordering those whom ey had left governors, to collect the best d greatest force they could for succour in is great urgency. Certes, there was not y province in all Christendom so remote not to be engaged in this business, for ery one had at that time either its king or incely inheritor in the very seat and cen-: of the danger, all being in Constantin-le, and he who was not there thought mself ignoble and unworthy of a name.) that the whole world was thus called to ms. How much the greater the fame ran the mighty power of the enemies, so uch the more diligence was exerted in all ırts for the succour; but as we shall speak :reafter of what the succours were which rived from all parts, let us now return to

the emperor. He, when he heard the new and the uproar among the people, still usin his wonted presence of mind and singul benevolence, would be carried out of th palace in an open litter upon men's shou ders, and going in this manner through a the streets and public places, accompanie by the kings and princes who were at th time in his court, he inspected every thin and provided all things that were needfu And as now his beard and head were whi by reason of his great age, and the majes of his appearance carried with it great sho of authority and benignity as well; th sight of him served to make those disp fear who before had entertained it. Abo all, as he was generally beloved, and it w now many days since the people had see him, there was not one now who did n come to meet him, pouring blessings upo his head, mingled with tears at beholdin the extreme weakness of his age; nor w there any one so fond of himself, or so av ricious of life, that he would not at that ho have willingly given a great part of his ow allotted time to have lengthened out hi

us it is that benevolent and merciful inces are beloved. Princes, and kings, id knights, surrounded the litter and ac- mpanied it on foot. And in this manner ey went through the city, inspecting the alls and towers, and providing whatever as necessary. Certes, this was so honour- ble a day for him, that it seemed all his ho- ours and victories of former times had then eceived their consummation and crown.

n the morrow he called for his son Prima- on, and in the presence of all made this peech unto him: Amid all the prosperity herewith Fortune hath favoured me in my ime, my heart was never fully at rest, being lway uncertain what would be the end hereof, for in the end only is the true con- entment of all things wound up and sealed, hen it is good and conformable to what ath gone before; and now do I perceive vhat I owe for this to our Lord, seeing that n the extremity of old age, when my trength hath failed me altogether, and Constantinople is about to be besieged, and my empire in danger, I behold for its de-

fence and succour my house filled with such great princes and renowned knights, in whom all courage is comprized, approved by their feats of prowess, and known and feared because of them, whose names must perforce excite fear and dismay in the minds of their enemies; and for their captain, thee, my son Primaleon, to whom the care of this great enterprize rightly appertaineth, touching thee so nearly by reason of the authority thou holdest in this empire, and thy hope of succeeding to it; this danger comes upon thee in the best time of life, when thou canst jointly avail thyself both of strength and prudence. My aid can be in nothing but in giving thee counsel. I exhort thee, that if at times that haughty and courageous heart which nature hath given thee, should, led by its courage, seek to go beyond the bounds that reason in these cases prescribes, thou wouldst restrain it with the advice of these princes thy friends and kinsmen, and with mine, who as a father shall still have an eye on thee, and as one of greater experience will still tell thee what is certain. More frequently is an enemy defeated by prudence

han by force of arms; and to wish to trust every thing to them is sometimes hurtful. For as brave spirits are needful to abide danger, so at times is it hurtful to seek it out of season: and things of great import should be done with such order, that no disorder can impede their success: these are not things in which the impulse of inclination is to be followed; for then would the loss be certain, and the remedy full doubtful. You, Sirs, whom your approved prowess hath taught to lose all fear in all things of whatever quality, I beseech ye, regard this danger as it requires; for I fear me, that by reason of your great courage ye hold it too lightly, whereof some ill may ensue. And this is all I fear; as to the rest, so confident am I, that I do not care to bid ye to be of good heart—that ye are by nature; and it were wasting words to exhort your courage.

So well content were these princes with this exhortation, delivered by so rare and excellent a prince, and at such an age, that even if nature had made them weak, his presence and authority, and the weight of his

speeches, would have given them co
Primaleon kissed his hand, which he
afterwards to Arnedos and Don Du
his sons-in-law, and to his son Pol
giving them his blessing with many
All the rest he embraced; and ther
not one among them who could r
from weeping, resenting his extreme f
ness at a season when his strength
have been so greatly needed. Eac
returned to his lodging, to make read
and caparisons, all being eager for th
of proof.

CHAPTER 157.

ome days, which were past in such
ations and determinations as such a
equired, the damsel of the princess
ıa, by whom the intelligence had been
t, took her leave and departed. The
s, Gridonia, and Polinarda, showed her
ıvour, and guerdoned her with many
ınd things of great value, thinking
r in part to requite her for the good-
ıich had brought her there. To the
s Targiana they sent the thanks which
ıt a thing deserved; and certes, the
ɔr was so affectionate to the virtue
ɔbleness of Targiana, for the sense
he retained of the service she had
im in his own family, that one of the

things which he gave most in charge to his son and to the other princes was, that if at any time occasion should offer in which they could requite her, they would shew themselves not ungrateful.

Many days had not past after the damsel's departure, before some of the dwellers on the sea coast gave news of the fleet which appeared in the distance; it was in truth a mighty power, and fear made it appear more so, for they affirmed that the whole sea was so covered with ships and gallies, that nothing else could be seen. Presently the coasting vessels and fishermen's barks began to enter the port, who being terrified at the sight of this great armada, hastened thither, thinking that their safety lay there rather than in any other part. These, as nearer eye-witnesses, could better declare the certain truth, and they affirmed among other things, that only the diversity of musical instruments was such and so various, as if the universal world were there gathered together; and as the mode of exercising them, and also the fashion thereof were so divers,

ppeared thereby that there were many
ers princes and captains. Moreover, the
lies, which were separate from the other
t, made such a show and muster as excited
greater wonder, for the sea being calm
quiet, they came with their oars stretched
in order, and the masters and captains
reof clad in glittering arms, and with
rnments of silk and gold, which glittered
r off. Drums were beating and trumpets
nding, and at times, when it was needed,
whistles of the masters rung around, all
ngs combining to render it a grand spec-
le. They who brought the tidings to the
rt were so overcome with fear, that none
them could give any regular relation, and
two gave the same account; but there
re none among them who did not hold it
: a mighty power; and every one increased
e wonder according to the measure of his
rs, and he who had most words at will,
lated the most marvels.

his news so wrought upon Primaleon and
the others, that they went out through the
ty to encourage the people, whom the fear

of destruction now so near approaching, l
bereft of all heart and judgment. Thatsa
day an enemy's galley entered the harb
with a white flag at the prow in token
peace and safe conduct. Having come n
the shore a page landed in seemly appa
who went to ask leave of the emperor fo
ambassador to come on shore, who brou
a message from Aibayzar and the o
princes in the fleet. He being returned
this permission, there landed from the
ley a man of great stature, with a long w
beard, clad after the Turkish manner,
long robes of silk wrought with gold
rare fashion, and accompanied by
knights, who also by their adornments
the authority of their persons, appeared t
men of great esteem. As they went
way to the palace, the crowd followed
them, for in these cases they who have
interest in the matter are always the
desirous to be able to give * news. Son

* As a sample of the manner in which this romanc
been debased in the old translation, I will here inse
whole of this passage as comprest and flattened by so
A. Munday's journeymen.—"After the manner as I

princes were of opinion that it were bet-
he should be heard before Primaleon,
hout the emperor's being present, that he
ht not be a witness of his great feeble-
, as in truth the certainty which he could
rt of that, would greatly encourage the
ıy. Others were of a contrary advice,
ning that the state of the emperor was
rious to all persons, and the more they
ld endeavour to conceal it from the ene-
the worse would they suppose it to be;
since his faculties were yet so entire that
could return a better answer, the em-
y ought to be rendered to him himself,
to no other. This opinion prevailed, and
g made known to the emperor, he at
desire gave order that he should be

---

ed unto you already, the emperor provided for the
aining of his enemies, and as his majesty was adv sing
lf about these affairs, he was advertised that an am-
dor was arrived at the port of the city, who demanded
onduct before he would come on shore. His majesty,
the counsel of the kings and princes, was content to
his request: whereupon the ambassador took landing,
being accompanied with four knights, he took his
to the emperor's palace."

carried into the Hall of Audience, where being accompanied by his captains, he received the ambassador. He having entered, turned his eyes upon them all, and it plainly appeared to him by what he saw, that before the city could be taken, there would be something to do. Advancing farther, he came before the emperor, and being a man who had seen much and was discreet moreover, he demeaned himself towards him with much reverence and courtesy, and with less pride than the ambassadors of the enemy had heretofore been wont to display. The emperor received him with his accustomed benevolence; and the stir being hushed, the ambassador standing up, began to say with a loud voice, High and mighty prince, I could have wished that this siege had come upon thee when thou wert in other condition, and in the full strength of man, that so in the struggle and the danger of thy people thou mightest have called thyself their companion, as well as their lord; and that when the victory in so great an enterprize shall be won by thine enemies, it might have been worthy of greater glory. Albayzar

dan of Babylon and prince of Turkey, th the other soldans, kings, and mighty nces, send me to let thee know, that they e come unto this country with all their wer and the aid of their allies, with the sire of taking vengeance for all the hurt ich they have in aforetime sustained from ; and they are come with greater prepa- ion both of men and of arms than was edful on such an occasion. Nevertheless, bayzar holding thy former nobleness in membrance, and that which thou hast own in old time here in this house to Alche- ana and Olorique his parents, and since, to e princess Targiana, who is greatly averse this war, proposeth to thee this means of commodation ; that thou consenting to liver up the city, and with it the knight the Savage Man, thy grandson, king of aracc, who is the cause of these evils, they ill leave thee the rest of thy dominions free id secure ; and hold themselves so satisfied ith these terms, that they will the same day aw off their fleet from thy country and re- rn. Certes, for the love which I bear thy rtue, I should advise thee, though re-

ceiving great pain in this, yet by chusing the lesser evil, to avoid the greater; for less evil it is to lose a city than an empire, and to deliver up one man, than to see many die.

Waste no more time, replied the emperor, in advising me, though the good will with which thou speakest be worthy of thanks. I should think it little to deliver up one man for the preservation of many, but if that man be such that he singly is able to preserve all the others, whom would you have commit such an error? And for giving up the city, that will God forbid; for it would not be fitting that this place, wherein he is so often celebrated, should be yielded to the enemies of his faith, that they with their unholy sacrifices should pollute his temples. Say unto Albayzar, that if he understood what he owes unto this house, he would come to it after a different manner, and far differently should he be here made welcome; and that though all others were leagued together for the destruction of my realm, he of all men would be bound singly to resist them. But I trust in

God that as other fleets ere this have been destroyed within sight of the walls of Constantinople, and other chiefs and other nations have found their graves in its fields, that these also shall have the same unhappy end. As for mine old age, I complain not of it; since time hath spared me that I might see it conclude with the joy of this victory more. And for the labours and dangers which I should have partaken, this company, with whom I am surrounded, may well excuse my presence; I have such confidence in them, that I think little of all dangers with which the time threatens me.

It may be, sir emperor, said the ambassador, that fortune which till now hath never offered you any displeasure, prevents you from understanding the danger in which your state stands, and thence it is that you reject that advice which best suits you. I return with your answer. The Gods bear witness for me of the good will with which I gave you my counsel. Without longer tarriance he returned to his galley, being full nobly accompanied, *for so* the emperor gave order.

Having re-embarked and taken leave
who accompanied him, he returned
fleet, where the princes gladly w
him. And they rejoiced in the e
answer, for the greater part of th
been discontented, thinking that h
accept the terms which were proffe
by which means Albayzar alone woul
honour and satisfaction, honour be
of which they who seek it should
most envious.

CHAPTER 158.

ambassador being thus departed, the eror Palmerin called to council; and as ime now required more deeds than words, words were there expended, only every had his charge appointed him. The city committed to the emperor Vernao, and king Polendos, they twain being the st captains, with five thousand horsemen, four hundred foot, all of the emperor's ple, who being nearer at hand, and as enemy had been long expected, had had e to arrive. Don Duardos was chosen general consent, chief captain and go- ior of the field, having under his conduct thousand horsemen; full power over the and the other being reserved to Primaleon,

as well within the city as without, he being the person to whom the main care belonged. For the guard of the person of Don Duardos there was the giant Dramuziando, who at this time was not the one that did the fewest feats worthy to be held in perpetual remembrance; Mayortes the Great Khan; Pridos duke of Wales; Rosiram de la Brunda, his son; Argolante duke of Ortam, Pompides, and fifty English knights who came with them to the feasts at the marriages. Over the other horsemen, who were about eight thousand, four captains were appointed. Arnedos king of France over fifteen hundred; he had for his body-guard his sons Graciano and Goarim, and Germam of Orleans with fifty French knights; king Recindos of Spain over fifteen hundred also, with the princes Beroldo and Onistaldo his sons, for his guard; and the giant Almourol, with an hundred Spanish knights. The soldan Belagriz was captain over all his own people, being four thousand horsemen; for as hath been said, he came to this court royally accompanied, and as his dominions were nigh at hand, there had been time for him to receive succour, since

he coming of the enemy was certainly known; for the guard of his own person, he had provided one hundred of the chiefest knights of his court, among whom was his son Blandidon, in whose prowess he had great trust. To Belcar duke of Pontus and Durazo, was committed the like charge as to the kings Recindos and Arnedos, having for the guard of his own person Don Rosuel and Belisarte his sons, with twenty knights.

To king Tarnaes of Lacedemonia, who was now an old man, was given the guard of the palace, for the more security of the empress and the other queens and ladies, they being in such fear that nothing could give them comfort; he had attending on him two hundred knights. Primaleon took under his own immediate charge seven hundred knights, wherewith he had regard as well to the field as to the city, and visited every part and place.

Palmerin, Florendos, Platir, and divers other knights, were at their own disposal, to give succour wherever they perceived most ne-

cessity. And though the court was well stored with noble chivalry, yet was the presence of him of the Savage greatly desired, and his want no less felt, being great indeed at such a time. The emperor and Don Duardos, and all the other chivalry, greatly regretted the absence of such a man.

The captainships and charges being thus allotted, and the knights informed what banner they were to follow, and the foot soldiers, who were about fifteen thousand, the same; on the following morning at sunrise Don Duardos gave order to beat the alarum, for intelligence was brought that the Turkish armada had arrived, and that they were about to land about half a league below the city; whereupon, accompanied with the other princes and captains with their banners all in order, he issued out to oppose their landing. The emperor caused himself to be carried up into a high tower of his palace, which commanded the view in that direction, that he might see what past. The empress and the princesses wishing to do the same, besought Primaleon to place them where they could

the sight. But when they perceived so
at a multitude of nations, and such a
n of ships as far as the eye could reach,
l so many splendid arms glittering from
r, and such various and loud cries and
mours as seemed to rend the very firma-
nt, and banners of many colours giving
ow of how many chiefs were there assem-
d together, they had not heart long to
k upon such a sight; but returning to the
press's apartment, every one began to
ail her misfortune, for most of them had
ir husbands and children in this great
nger, so that none was free from fear.
imaleon encouraged them with chearful
rds, and king Tarnacs did the same; but it
oted not to give them good hope, for great
r so troubles the judgment, that it is un-
le to perceive the remedy even when it is
inted out.

n Duardos having reached the place
ere the enemy meant to disembark, dis-
buted his captains along the beach, least
ile they were busied in one part the Turks
ght land at another. But this was of no

avail, for the defenders were so few and the enemies so many, that it was impossible to protect all points. Don Duardos with his body repaired to that part where he saw the greatest need, which was where Albayzar himself came, accompanied by the most notable knights of the fleet, and by two giants, who in bigness and fierceness seemed to exceed all others; and here there was much to do, for the enemy seeing their leader there, prest on to follow him; and they of the emperor did wonders to defend the landing, many being hurt on both sides. Albayzar perceiving that it would be difficult to win his landing, according to the stout resistance which was made, ordered these giants to step from the boat into the water, where it was so deep as to be up to their breasts. Each of them carried in one hand an iron mace of exceeding great weight, and in the other a shield which was rimmed with hoops of steel of exceeding strength; and such was the surpassing strength with which they were gifted, that never a blow which they delivered but felled him who received it. In this manner they began to secure

e landing, for every one who saw the ha-
ock they made, made way for them. The
ave Dramuziando seeing this slaughter
ade by these two devils, leapt from his
orse, and rushed into the water, and cover-
g himself with his shield went against him
at was the foremost of the twain, and they
o began a beautiful battle. Don Duardos
aring that if the other giant should come
to help his comrade they might slay
ramuziando, which would be a great loss,
ncouraged by his own good heart, dismount-
d, meaning to be the one that should pre-
ent them. Then began the press to be hot,
or they of the emperor, seeing their leader
n foot, every man would accompany him.
On the other side Albayzar, seeing his
giants opposed by such brave enemies,
would not let his companions have so
much the vantage of him, but threw him-
self in like manner into the water, being in
like manner accompanied by his people.
Then waxed the battle so fierce, that blood
began to change the colour of the sea.

The brave Palmerin, who was doing wonders

in a distant part of the battle, hearing the cry on that side, and seeing so many loose horses in the field, presently concluded that there was the place of danger. And spurring that way his own horse, which now for pure fatigue could hardly carry him, he rode up, where seeing his father Don Duardos in the water, all covered with blood, and engaged in battle, with so terrible a giant, he leapt off, and forcing his way through the battle, came up to him, and put himself before him, saying, Leave me, Sir, to withstand this enemy, and accompany Dramuziando; it is not fitting that you who are chosen out to be the support of the whole army, should put yourself forward in every danger, for it is to the general hurt. If Don Duardos had not himself well perceived that it did not become a commander so greatly to hazard his person, he was so desirous of victory that he would not have relinquished this to his son: but seeing how the matter stood, he drew back, and gave him place. Albayzar meantime was not idle, but laid the way open before him with his sword; but now the valiant Florendos, who

l now been engaged elsewhere, met
ıd so notable and terrible was the com-
ich ensued between these men, that
remained after it in plight for another
. The giant Dramuziando behaved
so well, that by fair force he slew his
, being himself so punished by his
that he was carried into the city on
houlders, by order of Don Duardos.
in of England had less to do with his
or he found him well marked with his
blows, and being fresh himself, pre-
killed him ; yet not without receiving
ounds in requital, and in such places,
r fifteen days he could not bear arms.
ar seeing himself wounded and hardly
l by Florendos, and his giants slain,
ıt for this reason the others were dis-
, retreated into his boat, leaving Flo-
also well marked by his sword. In
ıe manner all they who could retreat-
l they who could not, perished either
water, or by their enemies' hands.

uardos seeing that the Turks were re-
ing, went to horse, and made signal

that his people should re-mount also. Then seeing that there was still much fighting in many places along the beach, where Arnedos and his division on one part, the soldan Belagriz in another, and Recindos and Belcar each at his station were doing wonders, he held this good beginning for a good sign. But it was told him that Florendos, Platir, Blandidon, and the giant Almourol, were all carried to the city well nigh senseless for loss of blood, and that Belcar and Recindos were sorely handled, and Palmerin sore wounded, and Dramuziando so that his life was despaired of; and then he began to think more of what had past, calling to mind that if every victory were to cost as much, few such would suffice for their utter ruin. And as it was now noon, he gave order that all the wounded should retreat to the city; and they were so many that they made the sound lose hope. Primaleon then came into the field with his seven hundred knights, to give some relief to those who remained there, and would fain have persuaded Don Duardos and the other captains to take some repose; but neither his persuasions, nor the need they felt could in-

1 to do this, till night came on.
was that night, and full of dismay
n the city, for on one hand they
groans of the wounded, and on the
entations for the dead; and with-
ries of the enemy and the sound of
uments. Not that the enemy them-
e without loss; in truth, their loss
far greater, but the greatness of
itudes made them feel it less.

CHAPTER 159.

When the emperor's captains were t
come into the city with their peo
they passed the night in visiting them
were wounded, whom Primaleon found
be so many, and judged the want of t
help to be such, as he was out of hope
defend the enemy from entering on land
next day. And most of all, for that Pal
rin of England, Florendos, king Recin
Belcar, Arnedos, Don Duardos, with
principal knights of the court, among wh
were prince Beroldo, Don Rosuel, and I
sarte, were in such case, as they could
endure to bear arms for some days; an
they had attempted it, it would have b
to their great hurt. Upon this he conclu

with the general advice, to let the enemies take landing, and suffer them to pitch their tents without opposition. In the meanwhile the wounded persons would be in better disposition, and the succours they looked for would be likewise arrived, wherewith they had good hope to bid the enemy a brave battle, and with banners flying before the walls of Constantinople, to win the victory with more joy to themselves, and greater destruction of their enemies; meantime they would provide for all occasions in such sort, that the besiegers should feel the difficulties of the siege as much as the besieged themselves. This being resolved on, Don Duardos and Primaleon looked to the cure of the wounded; but there was little to do with them; Palmerin being accompanied by the fair Polinarda, thought nothing of his hurts, his true remedy being to be visited by her; for in truth, though it be the common opinion that love is after marriage converted into friendship, whereby its first fervour is moderated, nevertheless, when it is excessive and beyond the common order, alway something of what it has been remains, to make

it resent the pain or pleasure which time occasions, more keenly than others in whom it hath never had such force. In like manner Florendos forgot the grief of his wounds, having Miraguarda by his bed side; and the same consolation Platir found with Sidela; Polendos with Francelina; Beroldo with Onistalda; Graciano with Clarisia; Don Rosuel with Dramaciana; Belisarte with Dionisia; Francian with Bernarda; Goarim with Clariana; and others of the knights with them to whom they bare most affection.

But Dramuziando was not in like case as these, for his wounds were so dangerous, as could not be healed by the sweet company of his best beloved Arlanza, towards whom he was in the extreme affectionate; he fell so often into such deadly swoons, that all thought him gone, whereat the emperor and all his court resented as much sorrow as if their whole salvation from the peril in which they stood, hung upon his single person; the love which they bore him, and which he by his deeds merited, being so great. Don Duardos, though he needed rest himself,

nade no account of rest, and could take ione, seeing Dramuziando in such estate; ınd he and Flerida always attended him, or Arlanza with despair was well nigh dead ierself, and could nothing help him. In like rise Florendos and Miraguarda attended the ;iant Almourol, whose danger almost was in he same estate with Dramuziando. Certes, he loss of these twain was thought so great, that there was not a person in the court who would not have given a portion of his own life to have sustained theirs, especially Dramuziando's, for whose recovery the ladies shed many tears and performed many devotions. This sorrow was somewhat cheered by the arrival of Daliarte at this time, whose presence greatly rejoiced them; and greater joy did they all receive in that he certified the emperor, how Florian would not be long absent. The emperor lifting up his hands to heaven, exclaimed, God grant that I may see him in my days, and that it may be in time for the besiegers of this city to feel his prowess; I have such confidence in it, that methinks only therein doth the remedy consist of this great destruction with which For-

tune threatens us. This he said with tears in his eyes, holding Daliarte in his arms with such entire love as if he had been one of his grandchildren, as in truth he held him in the same account. Then sent he him to the empress, who received him with the same loving welcome, as did also the empress of Allemaigne, Gridonia, Polinarda, and the other princesses and ladies; Flerida was the one who felt this joy the most, and was most glad of his presence, as well because she knew the great love which Don Duardos her husband bare him, as also because he had sundry times preserved the life of her children by his knowledge.

The same day came to the emperor's court prince Floraman, who, weary with having wandered far and wide in quest of Florian, and being advertised how the enemies had laid siege to Constantinople, repaired thither to be present in time of such need; and he passed through his realm of Sardinia, giving charge to the governors he had left there, that they should levy succours with all expedition, and send them after him, as you

may hear hereafter. This occasioned a new stir of joy in the emperor and his court; and as if to make it appear that Fortune was not unmindful of their danger, the same day likewise arrived king Estrelante of Hungary*, accompanied like a powerful prince, with two thousand horsemen, and ten thousand footmen; for being near at hand he could come sooner than any other; with him came Frisol his cousin, and other signal knights, who were held in great account in that court. This succour gave much confidence to the besieged, and excited the other princes to hasten the coming of their people. Neither were they of the other part idle, for Albayzar, seeing the great destruction which had at the outset been made among his people, began with greater wariness to order all things; and having given order to look to the wounded, for as for the slain the sea was

* It is not remembered in this history that Estrelante is the nephew of Albayzar, his father Ditreo having married Esquivela, daughter of Olorique and Alchidiana. Palmendos, (i. e. Polendos,) C. 13. Albayzar must have been the son of their old age.

their burial place, he convened the chiefs of his armada to council; what they resolved on was, that they did nothing more that day, but took their rest, and on the morrow, as soon as it was day break, embarking all their people in gallies, brigantines, and boats, at a certain signal from the captain's ship, they pushed to shore at the same time, and ran all their prows aground, being so many, that they stretched along a league of coast. Finding no resistance, they joyfully leapt ashore, the boats returning for another load, and in this manner they disembarked; whereupon they sounded the drums, trumpets, cornets, clarions, and other instruments, making such a triumphant noise and outcry of rejoicing, that the uproar resounded in the city, and struck even the brave with terror.

Daliarte and Floraman desiring to see the camp of the enemy, requested the emperor that he would licence them to go thither, which his majesty would not grant to any: yet had he such assurance in the discretion and knowledge of Daliarte, that he judged every thing to be secure wherever he was.

ese two departed the city alone and un-
ned; and as the day was fair and clear,
that all things might be seen, they be-
ok themselves to a little hill, where they
ght at pleasure behold the sum and order
the enemy's army. Divers thought it
od to scout out and to take them, because
them they might understand the strength
the city; but Albayzar, of whom they pe-
ioned leave to do this, would not grant it;
r he knew the intent with which they were
me out of the gates. Instead wherefore he
nt an esquire unto them, who having at-
nded on him when he was in the emperor's
urt, and also in Spain, knew most of the
nights of that land; and learning from him
at they were Daliarte and prince Flora-
an of Sardinia, he sent to tell them, that if
ey would come near and see his camp they
ight do it without fear, for he was their
rvant. Such confidence had the two com-
anions in these words, that without delay
ey went down the hill towards him, which
lbayzar perceiving, he came forth, with two
ages in rich apparel attending on him, to
ceive them. One carried his shield, ano-

ther his helmet; he rode a large dark chestnut horse: his arms were rich and splendid, appearing as if they had been worked with gold, and over them he wore a cloak of white taffeta, slashed in many places, and those places so well chosen that they became it well. In his hand he carried a lance which was laid athwart the neck of the horse; his face was uncovered, and flushed with exercise; withal he was so comely and of such brave appearance, that he seemed worthy of his own great empire, and the great command which he at this time held. Having welcomed them full courteously and placed himself between them, he brought them to the camp, as one who was right confident in what they would see there, and led them through it, showing them his whole army, and the princes thereof, and the name of each, and the giants also, who were seven in number, besides the two whom Palmerin and Dramuziando had slain. And as they went from one part of the camp to another, he never ceased watching them well, to see if all this sight he had shown them could discourage them with fear or doubt of their

elfare: but they, though in truth the sight
id greatly dismay them, knew so well how
dissemble what they resented, that they
emed rather to disregard what they saw,
an to think much of it, giving the least
gard to those things which were most no-
ble; by the which demeanour they some-
hat disappointed the pride and haughtiness
Albayzar.

fter they had seen the whole army at full
isure, they offered to return, and Albayzar
companied them near the city, asking them
the health of the emperor and empress,
d using such speeches as seemed to offer
cuse for his coming: then taking his leave
them, he returned, and they walked on
e little distance which remained, talking
the mightiness of that armada. Daliarte
ving foreseen what would happen, could
t hide the sorrow he conceived in his mind;
r in truth great sorrow conceived upon
eat occasion will, maugre all effort to the
ntrary, manifest itself. Nevertheless, at
eir entrance into the city, because they
uld not discourage the minds of the peo-

ple, they put on countenances of good
and great confidence, such as migh
hope of victory. But when they were
to the palace, and the emperor was
with them to hold secret counsel, then
Floraman, by his commandment, be
give report of what they had seen.

Sir, said he, I make no account o
armour, of gold and jewelry beyond al
of glittering arms covered with pu
magnificent and splendid adornments,
tents and pavilions of great show, an
things as these; for if I should take u
to make rehearsal thereof, there woul
much to say, that I should have no
discourse of what is more needful.
must affirm to your majesty, and t
chiefs for whom the brunt of this da
reserved, that among these things
which I make no account, I saw s
so greatly to be accounted of, that I
speak of them without some sorrow
enemies, according to my judgme
that of Sir Daliarte here, can be no
number than two hundred thousand

men, among all whom I did not see one, either so advanced in years, or in such weak disposition of body, as not to be a full able man in the field. The very simplest of them carrieth such a bravery of mind, that they seem men picked out to the contentment of their leaders.

The king of Ætolia, being a young man of some thirty years of age, hath the guard to-day, with ten thousand horsemen, and forty thousand foot, bravely armed, and ready at all points, as if they had the battle in hand. What appears to me most worthy of fear or of doubt is, that all were employed in pitching their camp, and the great laboured as well as the little, none excusing himself by reason of the quality of his person, or the greatness of his rank; a thing this which gives greater courage to the men, and increases their love towards their princes and leaders. Neither did I see any one who was not in order, or any way disobedient to those who commanded him; a sign this that they were disciplined by prudent and warlike captains, of whom their enemies ought to stand

in fear. And also, it nothing pleased
to think of the great confidence with w
Albayzar showed us his whole camp, and
the which he will give the like assuranc
as many of your court as choose to be
it; for he hath all things in such array
order, that he has no fear his enemies
profit by any thing which they obs
therein. This is what I have noted.
Daliarte, peradventure, who hath a ke
judgment, may have observed more tha

Certes, the emperor replied, you have n
all things so well, that it is not possibl
any other to bring us a more certain a
ance in this matter; and the more t
things are to be feared, the more need l
we to take counsel how to oppose th
And since Albayzar lets us with such c
dence see his army, in like manner it is
pleasure, that if any one of his people chu
to see the city and the ordering thereof
may do it. You, my son Primaleon, s
no hindrance to any from doing this
would not be reasonable that they sh
discover in us, what we do not discov

em. For the rest, our captains will so ok to their men and their appointments, at they shall perceive we have the vantage them, or at least, that they have none er us. With this he broke up the council, d the princes betook themselves to their eral charges, that nothing might fail for k of diligence.

CHAPTER 160.

Albayzar, providing for the strength of his army, caused such trenches and rampiers of defence and fortification to be made round about his camp, that the strength thereof might with little guard have been defended against the whole world; how much more by so great and rare an army, that in the open field it might have been well secure against all fear. The different stations and guard thereof he allotted to the captains and chief persons of his camp; for albeit, such great precautions appeared unnecessary in an enterprize so certain of success as this seemed to be; yet Albayzar, who knew his enemies better, would not trust so much to fortune as to leave any thing at her mercy; but like a good commander gave good look to

very thing which might chance. When he thought all the wants of his army were well provided which the state of the war required, by advice of his princes, he set fire to the whole fleet, leaving only a few brigantines and small vessels which would be of use for stores. All the other ships, galleons and carracks, and all vessels whatsoever, were burnt, to the astonishment of his men, who thus saw themselves tented in their enemies' country, and exposed to so signal and terrible a war, in which they must needs conquer or die, all other means of safety being thus cut off before their eyes, so that the hope of life lay only in the strength of their own hands. They thought that Alayzar and the other princes who had ventured their estates in this great expedition, and were resolved to win all or perish, had given order for this conflagration, that their people, being desperate of any other means of escape, might perceive courage to be the only remedy of their lives; and this made them braver than even nature had done. Cortes, when the fleet began to burn, that action seemed then to have sprung from hearts full

cruel and greedy of vengeance. The flames spread along the water, as if the water itself were burning, and they rose up into the air mingled with thick black smoke, so as to hide the sight of heaven; and the pitch and tar sent out vapours so insupportably bad, that it stopt the very breath in the body of man. Never in any time had a thing of such signal cruelty been seen as this; the fleet was so mighty a one, that it seemed to crowd the sea, and in it were ships of marvellous greatness, equipped with purple and silk, and adornments of great price, befitting the great princes who came in them; and all this in the sight of them and their vassals was consumed to ashes by their own proper will and order;—certes, there was not any one who for sorrow could keep his eyes upon this great destruction; even the very advisers and authors of this act, and Albayzar among them, touched with compassion at so rigorous an action, withdrew into their tents not to be spectators of it. The roaring of the flames was heard afar off, and they seemed to attack the clouds; it was as if the whole uproar of the world were in that great

:. They in the city, when they first saw
: ships begin to burn, conceived it had
:n some negligence; but when they per-
ved that the fire spread regularly on, and
it none bestirred themselves to extinguish
they presently understood the intent of
:ir enemies. The emperor ordered himself
be carried to the top of a tower, from
ence he could behold it; and seeing so
table and fearful a sight, he held it for no
od sign, well weening now that the ene-
es could not be driven out of his empire
thout force, and at the expence of much
od of his friends and vassals. The em-
:ss and the other ladies, not bearing to
hold such a spectacle, retired to their
artments, being overcome with fear, and
:re with tears and supplications betook
:mselves to the comforter who remedieth
things. Seven days the fire continued, at
e end of which the smoke began to clear
ray, and leave the sea visible; and then it
as a new remembrance of regret for those
io had been the lords of so mighty a fleet
hich had so lately burthened the ocean, to
e now only the open sea.

But this was soon forgotten, for time put all things out of mind, and there now began to be frequent skirmishes, so that both what was present and what was to come gave them other things to think of. They in the city were not idle: the captains were full diligent in providing all things needful, and in seeing to the wounded, all of whom were in less than twenty days healed and sound, except Dramuziando and Almourol, they twain not recovering so soon. By this there had been time for succour to come from all parts, with such speed as the urgency of the siege required; for as most of the kings of Christendom had embarked their persons in this great danger, the governors of their respective kingdoms sent all the force they could; albeit, not such as they could have provided had there been more leisure allowed. That it may be known what was the force which each supplied, they shall here be stated. The emperor Vernao of Allemaign, had sent him two thousand horsemen, and ten thousand footmen; king Arnedos of France, had the like number; Recindos king of Spain, had two thousand horsemen, and eight thousand

footmen; prince Floraman of Sardinia had five hundred horsemen, and four thousand footmen; from Thessaly five hundred horse, and two thousand foot were sent to Polendos; Tarnaes king of Lacedemonia, had four hundred horsemen and four thousand footmen. To Florian of Thrace came four hundred horse and four thousand footmen. From England five hundred horse and ten thousand footmen. From Navarre came two hundred horsemen to Dragonalte. From Denmark two hundred horsemen to king Albanis. Drapos duke of Normandy, came with a hundred horse and five hundred foot. To Belcar came three hundred horsemen, and one thousand footmen. The whole succour amounting to eleven thousand five hundred horse, with Roramonte king of Bohemia, who brought four hundred, and the two thousand which Estrelante brought with his ten thousand foot; and sixty-one thousand five hundred foot, all good and chosen men: and these were besides those of the city, of whom account has before been given; so that all together were well nigh twenty thousand horsemen, and seventy thousand foot.

Truly the burning of the enemy's fleet was a good occasion for the safe arrival of these allies; the most of whom came by sea, and finding the port free, landed without resistance. Great joy and great encouragement did the coming of these succours afford, because of the great need there was of them, and also, for that there came with them many renowned knights, who gave confidence to others. And it was determined by advice of all, that as soon as they were all well recovered from the fatigue of their marches and voyages, and the wounded were also in perfect good condition, they should give the enemy battle, in order that they might not longer see them thus laying the country waste, a thing which could not be prevented.

CHAPTER 161.

ıme days past after the arrival of these ccours, in which nothing was done nota- ɜ enough to be recorded; the men being ak by reason of their voyage, and the ights so out of breath and fallen away in sh, that before they could be fit for the unt of service it was necessary they should cover strength. During this time there- re there was no other exercise of arms ıan some slight skirmishes between the ty and the camp, for the recreation of the ɔung knights, in which for the most part ıey of the emperor had the advantage. While things were in this state it came to ıass one evening after vespers, the emperor ɛing at his accustomed place to see the

field and the skirmishing, how it might succeed that day, and the empress, the princesses, and other ladies also at the windows from whence they were wont to see the battles, they saw a knight come riding on between the city and the camp, with such an air of security that he seemed to be full haughty and confident of himself. He rode a fire-coloured horse, his armour was enamelled with gold and silver, in the manner of truncheons crossing each other, and it was bloody in many places, which gave a grace to it, and testified withal that those arms had not been idle. He bore for his device, in a field argent, Love, bound by the hair to a golden pillar; his lance was laid athwart the neck of his horse, and on the point was a little white flag of taffeta, in token of peace. His squire bare another shield after him, covered over with black leather, and another lance in his hand: by him rode a lady on a mulberry-coloured palfrey, attired after the Turkish manner, in a robe of white satin, which was cut and pinked in many places, so that the black *silks* lying under the white, gave a very

brave grace unto her apparel; these openings were in some places gathered up with golden twist, and set round with jewelry, and the whole was worked in tambour a full palm deep round about: certain ancient histories were wrought at the edge, excellently done and to the very life. Her tire was Turkish also, being a high turban of black silk, worked after the same fashion as the robe, only that it far exceeded it in richness. Her hair hung loose down her shoulders, being such and so beautiful that it seemed to diminish the beauty of every thing else, and her face was covered because she should not be known.

So soon as the knight came opposite to Albayzar's tent, he stopt. Greatly was he eyed by all, for they knew not of what nation this knight should be, in that they judged him by his dress and armour to be a christian, but the apparel of his lady was Turkish. While they were waiting to see the certainty of this made known, they perceived him to send his squire to Albayzar's tent, having his face covered lest he should

be known, who addrest him thus, in the Greek language: Sirs, the knight whom you see yonder, by me giveth you to understand, that he hath long served the lady in his company, yet have his actions never proved of such deserving in her eyes as to induce her to grant him her love; nevertheless, knowing the great company of excellent knights who are assembled together at this siege, she hath desired him to bring her unto this place, where he must enterprize to joust against four knights on her behalf. And if it so fall out that Fortune favoureth him with the victory, she hath promised to requite his labour with her love: but if the knights of your camp shall refuse to try their persons against him, he must then offer the same challenge to those of the city, where if refusal be made likewise, it shall be accounted to him for the same desert before her, and obtain from her the same recompence as if he had vanquished where he made the defiance. Now then, Sirs, see if for your pastime any of ye will break your spears with him; it is to be with this condition, that conquering the four, he may be permitted to depart with his lady.

vould fain know, said the soldan of Persia, ıo was a gallant young prince, and of great ıown among them, since this knight is to :eive so great a guerdon as the love of the ly whom he brings with him, if he should eed to his wish in the joust, and more- er, to go his way securely, what prize he ill appoint for one of us who should joust :tter than himself. This, replied the squire, ɔu may send and ask him, for I have re- ɔrted to you what was given me in charge.

o without any more words he returned, ac- ɡmpanied with an esquire from the soldan ıf Persia, who was sent for a reply to this ıuestion; to whom the knight of the Lady nade this answer: The request of the soldan ıtandeth with good reason; say unto him, that if any of these four knights chance to unhorse me, it not being plainly the fault of my horse, I will be content to lose both horse and armour, and shew obeisance to any thing he shall command me, on condi- tion that this lady may remain at her liberty to do what she shall think convenient for her- ıelf. The Pagan princes were well content-

ed with this good offer of the knight, affirming that it proceeded from much confidence in himself; and in Albayzar's tent four young kings were selected by lot, out of many who would willingly have accepted the defiance. They were the king of Bythinia; the king of Trebisond; the king of Caspia; and the soldan of Persia; he being chosen without the chance of the lot, inasmuch as he it was who had accepted the challenge. These were all such men in arms, that if they had been picked out by choice, better could not have been chosen.

At this time Don Duardos, Recindos, Arnedos, Palmerin of England, and Dramuziando, came out from the city to the camp with a safe conduct, to see these jousts. Albayzar came out beyond the lines, unarmed, on horseback, and with a lance in his hand, being accompanied with five other princes and a giant, his favourite, of huge stature; they came to accompany the four kings to the place of the jousts, leaving orders that no person should come out of the trenches on pain of death. When they were come near

he city, they saluted each other
urteous words, little like the feel-
were in their hearts. The knight
y, being by nature haughty and of
ance, spake to them in the Greek
lding them lay aside these idle and
ompliments, and not hinder his
ad much to do. And with that
mself towards the lady, he put
posture for the joust.

quoth Albayzar, that if the knight
one, he is a proud one as well;
efore please him before he kills us
ncluding, he granted the first joust
of Trebisond, a young man of less
y years, who was mounted on a
courser, his armour of green co-
in his shield was figured in a field
d giant, in witness that he had slain
combat. Before he pricked for-
owed his head to Albayzar, as all
t to do, and then laying heels to
against the knight of the Lady.
ntered him with such force, as his
in pieces up into the air, doing

him no hurt; but the other's attaint was of other force, for it sent the king over the crupper with such a fall, that it was some time before he recovered his senses. This one being carried forth of the field, the knight returned to his post beside the lady, being content that he had sped so well. Presently the king of Caspia presented himself in the field, a young man also and a valiant, on a mulberry-coloured horse, being in carnation armour, and a hart in silver pourtrayed on his shield, in a field sable. He encountered the knight, and was sent to keep the king of Trebisond company. Much did they who were looking on marvel at these two encounters; and because the strange knight had now broken his lance, he took another, and returned to his post beside the lady. Incontinently the king of Bythinia advanced, with less confidence than the other twain; he was armed in the same colours, and after the same fashion as the king of Caspia, they being both conformable in inclination. He brake his lance upon the stranger's shield; the knight in his haste *missed* his attaint, but they met body to

ly as the horses past, with such force that
king was stunned and fell; he of the
ly lost his stirrups; but righting himself
edily in his seat, he returned again to the
y, of whom he besought pardon for hav-
failed in this third joust, and promised
t the fourth should make amends. At
s Albayzar could hardly contain himself,
pride with which the knight treated
s matter provoking him as much as the
rthrow of his own warriors.

en the soldan of Persia, who was the last
l chiefest of the four, as well in arms as in
k, being bravely mounted on a bustard-
loured horse, in gallant and rich armour of
ck and gold, and bearing in his shield,
rtune, stately placed in her chariot of
mph, in a golden field, advanced himself
o the course; Albayzar, to do him honour,
justed the beaver of his helmet, and gave
n his lance. He of the Lady plainly per-
ved that this fourth antagonist was the
e in whom most confidence was placed,
d that by the honour which Albayzar had
ne him he must needs be one of great ac-

count; and this gave him the greater desire to aim his attaint well, and make amends for the last. Before he advanced to the charge he exchanged some words with his lady, which no one heard, and being content with the answer, he pricked forth to receive the soldan, who came against him courageously. They met together with such force, as their lances were broken, and their shields raced through the midst, yet themselves nothing hurt and nothing shaken in the saddle; as they passed each other returning, the soldan said, Methinks, Sir Knight, in order to see which of us has most reason to complain, we ought to joust again; and as I see you without a lance, I will desire Sir Albayzar to send us others. At your pleasure, replied the knight of the Lady; I am little pleased at not having overthrown you; but the fault is in my horse; he is so sore laboured with travel, that he can hardly perform his duty.

That you may not have that excuse, quoth the soldan, I give you leave to take another, and if you have not one I will send and give

ı one. I am so unacquainted in this coun-
, replied the other, that I know not at
ɔse hands to ask one, and yours I should
accept with a good will. Not so, cried
ɪmuziando, who was present, this which I
ɛ is a right good one, and I am so well
ɪsed with your feats, that I should rejoice
ou would make use of it. Though I do
know you, Sir Knight, replied he of the
ly, yet I accept it as coming from your
ıd. So he alighted from his own horse,
l mounted on that of Dramuziando. Now,
, said he to the soldan, take no excuse
m me if I fail. Dramuziando got on the
ıer, which could scarcely bear him. By
s time spears were brought; each took
e, and they ran their second career. It
ıs full different from the first, for they en-
untered full butt; he of the Lady lost his
rrups, and the soldan went to the ground,
ving all his armour pierced, and a slant
ınd under the left shoulder; and he was
shaken with the fall, that they were fain to
rry him out of the field like the others.

ıe knight of the Lady turning the reins,

after he had righted himself in his seat, went back to his post, and looking to Albayzar, said with a loud voice, Now that I have accomplished the challenge on this lady's behalf, and am free from the conditions thereof, if you will grant licence to any more of your knights, and give me lances, I will joust here till night, or so long as my horse is able to hold out.

I perceive, said Albayzar, your confidence in your exploits maketh you proud. It doth not a little grieve me, that the charge which I hold here preventeth me from adventuring my own person; some one, however, will come, who will lower your pride, for I licence all. Don Duardos and his companions thought much of the goodness of this knight, and doubted if peradventure it was Florian; but the manner of his speech made them assured that it was not he.

It was not long before four knights presented themselves in the field. This mode of jousting, said he of the Lady to Albayzar, *doth* not seem good unto me. Let them

e one by one out of the lines; for other-
so many may come, that I and these
see me may run some risk. Albayzar
ght this well, and ordered three of the
to return, and come in turn if the other
ld be vanquished. But he of the Lady,
r by virtue of her favour, or because
were of little worth, soon sent them all
e ground, and would have sent as many
after them, if Albayzar would have let
come. But he, being displeased at the
vhich his people had received, told the
ht, since Fortune had given him so good
y, to go and take his rest for the re-
ider of it; another might come which
d peradventure be less to his liking.
ertheless, replied the other, I still wish
reak a pair of lances with you; but as
cannot be, I will break them with this
t by you, if you think good. See, cried
yzar, how soon Fortune will pay you
he favour she hath shewn! Making you
self seek the payment, and ask for ven-
ce upon yourself, which, in this request,
are full certain to meet with. Then
ing to the giant, he said with a smile,

and was not long before he armed hi
armour of black polished steel, with
mixture; his helmet and shield wer
same fashion, and were, in the judg
those knights, the best that they h
seen. In truth, though this giant v
was unarmed had appeared terrib
mighty, far more so did he appea
armour. The lady was stricken wit
fear at beholding him; Don Duar
perceived this approached her, and
raged her, saying, Lady, fear not this
ance, for by what we have seen, God, i
hath made your knight one who c
throw any thing. The lady bowed h

his horse. His own attaint was of less effect, for touching upon polished steel, the iron of the spear glanced off, without shaking or affecting the giant. Little were they, who wished him the victory, contented with this first encounter, for they judged that he must needs be conquered, seeing the might of the giant and the strength of his armour; he himself also was troubled at what had befallen him in the presence of such persons. Howbeit, turning again to the giant, and giving his horse the spur, they ran their second course. The giant hit upon the edge of his shield, something aslant, brake his lance, and gave the knight such a reverse, as had well nigh cast him out of the saddle; but the knight's encounter was of better fortune than the last, for taking him on the upper edge of his shield, the lance point glanced off again, and entered the vizor of his helmet, with such force as to wound him and make him fall back on his horse; and as he held the reins tight, the horse reared and fell back, falling upon him, whereby he was so sorely hurt, that he was borne senseless from the field. At this was Albayzar greatly cha-

grined, for he had expected that the issue would have been otherwise.

Now then, Sir Albayzar, said he of the Lady, I will with your leave go rest myself. And because I judge by the discontent which you have received from me, that I should not be well welcomed by you, I will go with these Sirs into the city to pass the night, which this lady also desires of me. To-morrow I will determine upon what I ought to do. I well understand, replied Albayzar, it is not your pleasure to accept any thing from me; but for what I have seen of your prowess, and also for what methinks this lady deserveth, I will accompany you towards the gates, being well assured that with king Recindos, and these Sirs, I am safe. This they all regarded as a favour, and the lady made him due obeisance for it. At the gate Albayzar took his leave, first asking the knight of the Lady to tell him who he was. You ask so little a thing, he replied, that being where I now am, I should err in not telling you—I am the knight of *the* Savage Man, your principal enemy; this

is the queen of Thrace, my wife; I am
lace where we may daily see each other,
erve each other. Then taking off his
et he discovered himself, a gentle per-
and flushed with what he had done.
Albayzar was so troubled that he made
no answer, for this was the man in the
l whom he most hated; and taking
: of the queen and of the others, he re-
:d in so discontented a mood that he
ıot speak all that day.

h full different hearts did Don Duardos
his companions enter the city, being so
ıl that they knew not what to do. The
s presently reached the emperor, who
nted it as though the help of his own
ation had entered the gates. This was
day in which the queen of Thrace seem-
to triumph above all others of her time,
ı was the love and welcome and surpas-
; courtesy with which those princesses
ladies received her. They were not only
nished at beholding her so beautiful, but
held her dress to be a marvellous thing
worthy of admiration, as what had been

worked and embroidered by the hand and skill of the infanta Melia, for the marriage of a daughter of king Armato of Persia, her brother, who died of a sudden accident three days before the marriage, as has been before said. The emperor could not let his grandson go from his embraces; neither could the empress and queen Flerida; and there was joy in all the court, as over a thing which had not been expected, and which some thought lost. Florian, when the emperor released him, kist the hand of the empress his grandmother, and of Flerida his mother, and of the king his father; and went on offering courtesy wherever it was due: and when these compliments were performed, he went to rest after his labours.

CHAPTER 162.

That you may know how it was the knight of the Savage arrived at this time, it has been already related how he discovered the enchantment, and delivered the queen his wife, from which place he took nothing with him except the dress which Lionarda wore at the jousts; it being his wish that in that attire she should enter Constantinople, because he held it for the rarest that he had ever seen, and the gallantest. And though his intent had been, after she was disenchanted, to go with her awhile about the world seeking adventures, that she might perceive what he was good for, yet knowing from Daliarte the necessity in which Constantinople stood, and the siege which was laid unto

it, he laid aside this his purpose, and hastened thither, desiring to be present in those dangers and difficulties to the which his friends were exposed. And thinking that he could by no means enter the city in sight of the enemies who compassed it round about, he thought the best means which he could devise was to conceal himself, and seem as if he came thither rather at his lady's command, than for any hatred or affection to either part. He therefore covered the shield of the Savage, as he was always wont to do when it was his will not to be known, and took the other which hath been described, and which he found hanging up in one of the halls of the dwelling wherein Lionarda was enchanted, it being to his conceit a goodly one. In this manner he presented himself before Albayzar's tents, where he sped in jousting as you have heard. This being over and he received into the city, there was less talk of the victories which he had atchieved, than of the wonders of the place wherein Lionarda had been enchanted. The fashion of the dress also in which she was clad was greatly eyed, as the quality

nanner thereof deserved. For though
court was the noblest in the world, and
so many notable and fair princesses had
bred up, and all rich and costly gallan-
and inventions which men could devise
in use there, yet all these lost all value
mparison with the richness, costliness,
allantry of that dress in which the queen
. One of the things which there was
to talk of was, that it appeared as if
l that very hour been made, though it
nore than four hundred years old, it
; as much as that or more that the in-
Melia had been dead. It was known to
e work of her hands by certain letters in
order of the robe, which said, Melia,
which were curiously wrought in many
s after a rare manner.

n Florian of the Desert had rested a
le of days, being desirous to see himself
e field with Albayzar, he besought the
ror not to delay the battle; and it
d now have been offered, if all the men
iorses had been in fit condition. It was
ght strange that the Turks had given no

attack ; for it did not appear reasona
they should have come so far, and wi
a determination to lay siege to a city
the overthrow of which depended th
empire of Greece, and now leave it i
repose, without doing all that was
in assaulting it, to bring about its t
struction. In truth, what they judge
negligence in the enemies was rare c
for Albayzar and the princes of th
well knew what hurt the besiegers a
to receive from the besieged when th
and stations are well manned; an
might from day to day be losing the
ple in vain assaults, and at last not ta
city, there being so many especial
to defend it; this they would not do.
knew also, that as so great an assemb
of people were there, stores must nec
ere long, while they without fed up
produce of the land, which the people
of themselves supplied them with, th
might not destroy them : and when
the city had consumed all, then p
must they offer battle, when their be
were as fresh and entire in their stren

heir arrival, which could not be if they
y day adventured in uncertain combats.
this reason the city had not been attack-
and it seemed that the counsel had been
ly taken, for the stores could not hold
long, and though they should, the be-
ed would not forbear to offer battle,
hich they were full as desirous as the
egers, being confident in themselves and
ie justice of their cause, and in the fa-
of God, who alway in such times help-
hem that put their trust in him.

gs being in this state, there came one
into the city, about the hour of din-
a messenger from the soldan of Persia;
being forthwith led before the emperor
was then dining with the empress,
ig his knee to the ground as he had been
nanded, he said, High and mighty
e, the soldan of Persia, my sovereign
with the licence and consent of Albay-
is captain, and of the whole Turkish
, saith, that being something discontent-
what befel him in the joust with Florian,
uld once more gladly meet him, and

it shall be after this manner: if yo
will permit twelve knights of you
whom you have most confidence
one among them, to come into th
morrow morning, to joust and com
twelve Turks, of which company I
the captain. The combat shall be
fore the empress's chamber windo
end those princesses and ladies m
valour and prowess that shall be
both sides; and they will agree to
and end the combat, when these
think good so to command them
standing my master knoweth that
posal he and his companions make
for themselves. Moreover, he
the empress, that it may stand
pleasure, if after the jousts are e
remain in fit state, that they may e
evening ball: for the fame of the
her court maketh them who have
it desire this.

Certes, replied the emperor, the
asketh like a gallant and gen
and his age and prowess are wo

ed in all parts. My intent was not to
nsented to these combats, such alway
envy in those who are not included
; but who is there that would not
hrough any intent to do the pleasure
a prince? Tell him that I am con-
send twelve knights as he desireth,
it to-morrow at two o'clock they shall
the field. The empress will give a
d I will desire the ladies, that they
let the combat proceed so far as to
t them from coming to it. Withal, I
him that they come alone, or if any
come with them to behold their feats,
ey be without arms, as shall be done
part. If your majesty, replied the
knew truly what are the actions and
on of the soldan, you would have
t this caution unnecessary; I will
er deliver it, and it shall be as your
y desireth; and with that he made his
ice and departed, bearing this answer
soldan, who was well pleased there-
His comrades began to prepare gallan-
emembering that the ladies were to
m. Among the knights of the em-

... there were some disputes, for every one ... this have been one in this number; ... last it was concluded that he of the Savage, ... he must perforce be among them, should ... use the rest. This ended the dispute, and ... sputes ought alway to be cut short at first, ... when they become dangerous the end ... cannot be good.

CHAPTER 163.

Between the knights of the emperor's court arose a great controversy, because every one strove to be of the number of the twelve; but as this was impossible, because they were many, and the number challenged was so few, in the end they consented to what was reasonable, and agreed to obey the determination of the knight of the Savage, he being the chief in this adventure. They whom he chose were Palmerin of England his brother, prince Florendos, Graciano, Beroldo, Floraman king of Sardinia, Blandidon, Platir, Pompides, king Estrelante of Hungaria, Don Rosuel, Francian son to king Polendos, and Don Rosiram de la Brun-

da*, the first friend and companion of the knight of the Savage, who was at this time in the court, having arrived with the troops from England. All these were armed in rich armour, with gay surcoats of great cost, wrought and adorned by the hand of their ladies; for though the most of them were married, yet love was as rooted in them as it was in the days when that name seemed to them more worthy of reverence than all others. In this manner they went out of the city, accompanied by Don Duardos, Arnedos, Recindos, the soldan Belagriz, and Dramuziando, they being unarmed, who went to see the battle, thinking that by these twelve they should judge what prowess there would be found among their enemies, as they knew the doughtiest among them would be chosen.

When they reached the field of battle, which

* These twelve knights prove to be thirteen, including Florian There are very many such petty oversights in *the book.*

as nigher to the city than to the army, the ɔldan chusing it to be so, to the intent that ıe empress and her ladies might the better ehold it, they found the soldan of Persia nd the knights of his company already there, rmed like men who in the fashion and rich- ess of their arms wished to show that they 'ere great personages, and also to appear 'ell before the ladies. There were four rinces among them, who were heirs to ıighty kingdoms, and the other knights 'ere of great rank in arms and in estate. he armour and devices which they bare are ot here related, because they will be writ- ɔn of in another place. The king of Bam- a, the king of Parthia, the king of Arme- ıia, and the giant Framustante, with some ther knights of great prowess, came to ac- ompany them, unarmed. The soldan be- ıg desirous to cope with the knight of the avage, to see whether he could revenge ıimself for the foil which he had from him eceived, seeing him in the middle of the hristian knights, took his post opposite him, ith the king of Etolia by his side, who was he signalest knight of the twelve, and a

special good jouster. As the fame c
king was known in the court, and this l
to be he by the device in his shield, (
was a golden bull in a field sable, in m
of such a one which he had won by
of arms, conquering the keepers ther
atchievement upon which he greatly
himself,) Palmerin confronted him
rous that day to show his lady Polinar
constant he was in her love.

The soldan now put down his beaver,
the king of Armenia adjusted and ga
his lance; his companions did the lik
being all on both sides ready in their
at the sound of a trumpet whicl
mustante blew, they ran at each oth
great force; and each encountered
tagonist full on the shield, none fai
his attaint, all being so well delivere
the greater part of them went to the
Palmerin encountered the king of
with such might, that piercing thro
shield, and entering his armour, th
drove him from off his horse with t
dle between his legs, the girth burst

mself not being so little shaken but that he
t both stirrups, though he speedily re-
vered them. The knight of the Savage
d the soldan of Persia encountered with
eir lances, and the soldan not able to bear
rigorous an encounter, caught hold on the
ck of his horse ; but their horses in passing
n against each other with such a shock,
at both were stunned and fell to the ground
ith their riders. Prince Florendos en-
ountered Arjelao, prince of Arfasia, and
earing him to the ground, past on without
eceiving any reverse. In brief, they were
ll unhorsed on both sides, except Palmerin,
Platir, and Florendos, who desiring to ac-
company their friends, alighted from their
horses, sword in hand, and placed themselves
in order of battle. The soldan, who was not
satisfied to see that his party had received
any foil in the joust, joined the king of
Etolia, who held himself to have received
the greatest dishonour of all, and said, Since
we have been put to the worst by the fault
of our horses, let us now so behave ourselves
as without them to make amends. With
that he and his companions began the com-

but with the sword, in which they would have gained less than they did in the joust, if the succour of the ladies had not stood them in good stead: for the emperor seeing the soldan of Persia in great danger, by reason that Florian had won the advantage over him, and that the king of Etolia laboured more to save himself from Palmerin's blows than to offend him with his own, and that Florendos also had his antagonist well nigh at his mercy, though among the others there was little vantage to be perceived, and they were still performing a fair and beautiful battle, besought the empress, for the sake of these three who were the chief among them, to bid them cease, that they might be in condition to appear at the ball, as they had requested. It fell to the lot of the fair Miraguarda to separate them, who, accompanied with four damsels, and the kings Polendos and Tarnaes, went into the field. Certes there needed none of her intreaties to separate them, for her presence struck such reverence, that at beholding her, they who expected victory, as well as those who despaired of it, drew back. Miraguarda thanked them for their courtesy,

ad being accompanied by them all, returned
ito the city, prince Florendos leading her
y the hand. In truth, though among all
iese Turks there was not one who would
ot at that hour have given his life and king-
om, and renounced his religion into the
irgain to serve her, yet he who was most
irapt among them was the soldan. He fol-
wed her like one bereft of his understanding,
id addressed himself to her in that state
ith words indicating his intentions, calling
er Polinarda, whom he believed her to be;
ir as you have formerly heard, when Bar-
ocante and his companions came with the
amsel who brought the first embassy con-
erning this war, among other conditions
f peace which she propounded, the prin-
ipal was that Polinarda should marry the
oldan of Persia, and Florendos with Arme-
ia his sister, whereby it appeared how
: that time the soldan was enamoured of
er by report. And now seeing Mira-
iarda, and thinking this was she, love had
is to do in him; which made Palmerin,
ien he heard him, as great a Moor at heart
himself, for he now remembered the words

of the embassy which he had sent to ask her to wife, and if there had then been opportunity for him to have satisfied the wrath which he felt, he would not have waited till a future time to do it. And he then determined in every battle or skirmish which should take place, to do his endeavour to seek him out, and make an end of him.

When they had entered the city and reached the palace, the soldan and his companions were well received by the emperor, and Miraguarda by the empress, Gridonia, Flerida, and the other princesses; she had enough to say to Polinarda, telling her how amorous the soldan was, and laughing at what he had said to her in the other's name. Lady, replied Polinarda, you have such power over all who behold you, that the soldan is little to blame for what he did; nevertheless, the hatred which I have long resented towards this man, for what he formerly proposed about me, will not let me take any pleasure in any thing concerning him. I pray you let us not waste time in talking of him. The empress now came to them, and

. them to adorn themselves for the
ith Lionarda and the other princesses,
ere gone to the Garden of Flerida,
the emperor was wont to entertain
rs, it being a full pleasant place, and
or joyful occasions; the empress had
ven orders that it should be full featly
ed, as one who foreboded that this
be the last day of her pleasures; for
times the heart divines its sorrows,
seemeth that it forebodes evil with
ertainty than good. The emperor
the soldan next to himself with great
y, which he showed also to the kings.
uardos, Arnedos, and Recindos did
to the other knights, so that it might
seen how greatly the courtesy and
ity of that court differed from what
be found in other places. Those
the Turks who thought nothing con-
love, seeing the chivalry of that
judged it to exceed all in the world.
soldan and others, who had fixed
oughts upon the ladies, had more to
at, seeing so many of such excellent
, and they thought it not much that

any one should give up his time and surrender his liberty to them, seeking in their service whatever chance or fortune might proffer; and they judged that the notable feats and exploits worthy of immortal fame, which the knights of that house were wont to atchieve, proceeded more from the force of their love, than from that which nature had given them. Truly no such thought as this could ever enter the mind of such as are heretics to love, and hereby it may be judged how strong hold love had taken upon those who held this fancy. The soldan, who till now had not taken his eyes from Miraguarda, thinking her to be Polinarda, saw now by the order of their seats that he had been mistaken, for Florendos was by her, and Palmerin by Polinarda; this made him understand the truth; and as his mind had been long fixed upon Polinarda, but his eyes most upon the other, he could not determine which of the twain had most power over him, neither could he judge which had the advantage in beauty. The other Turkish princes being confident in their own victory, and that they should win the city, divided in their own mind those

adies among themselves, each allotting her
o himself whom he liked best. And after-
ards when they returned to the camp they
greed upon this allotment, the soldan then
aking up his mind and determining upon
olinarda, whom he took for his share. The
ing of Etolia fixed upon Miraguarda, leaving
he princess Lionarda for Albayzar, believ-
ng that by reason of the great enmity and
atred between him and the knight of the
avage, that spoil fell to him by right. In
his manner each chose his captive. The
ing of Caspia, though he was a young man,
vas so amorous of Flerida, that, leaving all
he younger beauties he resolved to have her
or his share. And from that time these
princes wore their colours when they went
into the field, with surcoats in conformity;
and some of them bore their names upon
the hem of their garments, and the rims of
their shields, thinking that with them they
should discomfit their enemies.

The ball lasted a long time, with excellent
nusic of rare instruments; it seemed that this,
is the crown and finish of all that had been

held there, was more worthy to be seen than all. It is plain that whoever had been bred in that court and seen the gallantry and nobleness of the emperor's house, and now saw that this day all the joyous festivities were to end, in which the dwellers therein had alway till now revelled, it is plain, I say, that no heart could have dissembled the great grief that this thought must needs occasion, unless it were wholly insensible; they who are so having this good, that neither doth great joy delight them, nor great affliction cast them down. The ball being ended, the Turks took their leave, going away far more amorous than they came: the emperor sent torches with them, to light them to the camp. But before they departed one thing befel which must be put in remembrance; and it was this: All the while the ball lasted the giant Framustante never took his eyes from Arlanza, who was with Dramuziando, his inclination leading him to her rather than to any other; and this passion so got the better of him, that when he took his leave he let fall some words of such pride and unseemliness, that Dramuziando was forced to cut them

rt; in fine, they defied each other for the rrow, greatly against the will of the em- or. But Dramuziando was held to be so temperate in all his dealings, that at he did was never without good and t cause. Presently they exchanged their ges: the emperor secured the field on his t, and the soldan of Persia promised the ne for Albayzar. This being concerted y went their way, wishing the night were t that they might see this notable battle; Framustante was held for a right valiant and a mighty. For this reason Albayzar arded him with great favour, which made the prouder.

CHAPTER 164.

On the morrow, before the hour of tierce, Dramuziando, who for anger and melancholy had not slept that night, went into the field, armed in strong arms without any bravery whatever, and accompanied by the emperor Vernao, and Don Duardos and his sons; for though he was well beloved by all, these were they who treated him with especial respect and love.

It was not long before the giant Framustante came, attended on by divers of his friends, he being in an armour very rich and strong, as it was necessary for him, dealing with so mighty an enemy: and as in bigness of body he far exceeded Dramuziando, and rode

and powerful horse, he gave great ence to his friends, and occasioned fear in his enemies; but they who had the strength of Dramuziando had such dence in it that they did not lose it in danger; and Albayzar was of their num- for the blows which he had received n his hands taught him to make more ount of him, than others did who did t know him so well. Some words past be- een them, but they were few; for Dramu- ando, as one who was melancholick, would ot suffer Framustante to indulge his pride n long speeches. So giving their horses the spur they encountered with their full force; their spears were so well driven, that piercing through both shields, they splintered against the armour underneath, and both clung to their horses necks, having lost their stirrups; but each had such presence of mind always, that they speedily recovered their saddles. Certes, whoever had seen the force of these encounters might well have perceived how different they were from those of other men, and might thence have conceived what the battle would be, for it might well be believed

that here was the greatest and most surpassing strength which could peradventure be found in the world. They drew out their swords, full keen ones, and beyond the size of those of ordinary men; yet did they seem bigger in the hands of their masters, who easily wielded them, delivering mighty and terrible blows. And because their horses, weary with the great weight which they carried, began to wax feeble and could not move so deliverly as the riders desired, they both alighted. Then, though the battle had before appeared rigorous and cruel, it was now full different, when they could better come at each other. If Dramuziando knew by his skill and activity how to defend himself from his enemy's blows, Framustante was not less skilful in warding his. Each in that hour put forth all his skill and strength, and thus they went on long time, hewing and smiting, without shew of vantage or weakness on either part; till their shields, though bound round with hoops of iron and steel, were so broken and defaced, that they could find but little defence in them; and their armour was so cruelly cut and mangled, that

eir bodies were exposed. All the regard-
ts of this combat, even they who were the
eatest masters of these things and had had
ost experience of them, held this to be the
eatest that ever was seen; though that per-
ps between Dramuziando and Barrocante
ght compare with it; for though Barro-
nte was held to be the fiercest of all giants
the world, Framustante was more active
an he, and this made the victory appear
ore doubtful. But the destiny of both,
hich was reserved for another hour, occa-
oned the battle to be broken off, greatly to
e displeasure of both: for at that very
ne, Targiana and the princess Armenia
rived in the camp, accompanied with many
ights. Concerning their coming it is re-
orded, that as it was now some time since
Bayzar and the soldan had departed with
e fleet, Targiana being certified that the
my were securely encamped before the
alls of Constantinople, and the defenders
ereof so begirt round about that they
uld not come forth, and moreover that all
e adjoining country was under the power
the Turks, she being naturally desirous

of seeing great things, and moved also by her affection for Albayzar, determined to go and visit him. So providing first for the government of her kingdoms, and taking with her two thousand knights whom Albayzar had left to serve her and guard his court, and having also let the princess Armenia know her purpose, they twain made the journey with this great company of knights, and arrived in the empire of Constantinople. It is related in the Chronicles of that house, treating of the virtue and humanity of Targiana, that so sensible was she of the honour which the emperor had shown her in that court, that when she came into his country, and saw the dwellers therein oppressed and cruelly treated, she did not without great pain hear their cries; and when she came within sight of the valley of the city, and saw how it was beleagered round about, and that the lords thereof were brought so nearly to destruction, she shed many tears and manifested great sorrow, as one who would have wished with far other guerdon to have requited the great feasts and courtesy and love with which she had been entertained in that court.

Having reached the army, and hearing that Dramuziando and Framustante were engaged in battle, she would not that any cause of sorrow should betide on the day of her arrival, more especially because she knew Dramuziando and the great worth of his person, and also the great account which Albayzar made of Framustante. So before she alighted, accompanied by Albayzar her husband, (who greatly rejoiced at her coming and at the princess Armenia's, that they might behold the revenge which he so greatly desired) the soldan also, and sundry other kings going with her, she came to the place of battle. Targiana went into the lists, having her face unveiled, and approaching Dramuziando she laid her hand on his shoulder and said, Methinks it were reason, Dramuziando, that all melancholy should be ended at the arrival of one who is so much your friend. Dramuziando turning his eyes upon her, and knowing her, drew back a little, saying, Certes, Lady, he must be of weak understanding who would not rather be vanquished and serve you, than remain conqueror in your disservice, much

more so, when in giving over the combat I receive favour, seeing I am matched with such a strong and puissant enemy. I, replied Framustante, receive no favour, and though I know well that these glozing words are not spoken from the heart, nevertheless, I shall make you find them true in the end. I pray thee, Framustante, said Dramuziando, shew thyself at this time obedient to the lady Targiana; we are in a place where we may at all times try ourselves together.

Albayzar then commanded Framustante to leave the combat, and not reply farther, for he feared some arrogance. Then Don Duardos and the emperor Vernao, who knew Targiana, approached with the other princes, except the knight of the Savage, who returned into the city, because he would not have her see him, and carried the news of her arrival. Targiana received them with fit welcome, making them such courtesy as such high princes deserved, and minutely enquiring for the health of the emperor and empress, and all her friends; then taking her leave, they went into the city, carrying Dra-

ɔ with them, who was wearied, but
. Targiana returned to the army,
ere were that day great feasts and
s, especially among the common
ɔ always rejoice for the pleasure of
:; and among the great also, they
ːring with how much more delight
ıuld now carry on the war, since
ːre ladies in the camp, before whom
ght display themselves; and they
that to serve them they would labour
ːeater feats than before, this being
thing for which they had envied
the city.

eror of Allemaign and Don Duardos
scoursing on the beauty of the
Armenia, for that of Targiana was
ıg faded. When they reached the
ːre they found greater stir for the
of Targiana than there was in the
army, for she was marvellously loved
ınd, ever since it had been seen how
she was for the favours which she
eived there. All that day was past
ng visits, for not only the emperor

and empress sent to visit her, but every princess and lady did so also; and the same was done to Armenia, because she came in her company. But Targiana, not contented with this ambassadry of visits, obtained leave from Albayzar to go and see the empress and her daughters. So on the morrow, being accompanied by fair and gallant dames, whom she brought with her for the nonce, she and Armenia, being right richly attired and adorned, taking with them the soldan and the kings who were in the camp, went to the city. The emperor, though by reason of his condition, he did not go out of the house, ordered himself to be carried upon men's shoulders to the city gates to receive her, and there taking her in his arms with such love as if she had been one of his daughters, he held her awhile with speeches answerable to that good-will which he bare towards her. Then he welcomed with great courtesy Armenia, the soldan of Persia, and the other kings that came in her company; and then discoursing with Targiana, he was carried with them to the palace, where at the entrance of the court-yard they found the

empress with all her family, by whom Targiana was received with such honour and such demonstrations of love, that more could not have been done had she been in the house of the Great Turk, her father. She in accosting all these princesses, when she came to Flerida, asked of Polinarda, who held her by the hand, who she was; and when it was told her, she stood awhile beholding her; for though Flerida was past her youth, yet was she of rare and excellent beauty. When she had knowledge of Miraguarda and Lionarda, she had then enough to think of and enough to envy, especially seeing her at liberty whom she thought she held fast enchanted: and addressing herself to Miraguarda she said, Now, Lady, I do not blame Albayzar, nor any one, for any excess which can have been committed for you. Towards Lionarda she used fewer words, remembering that she was married to Florian, whom she hated as her mortal enemy. The princess Armenia was abashed at what she saw, and also for that she was not acquainted with any of the ladies of that court, and she went among them like one whose judgment

was troubled, turning her eyes from one to another, and envying the beauty of some, that being the thing of all others which women envy most; and that her envy might be the more, she was between Miraguarda and Lionarda, who accompanied her in this way to do her honour, they being the persons in that house of whom she had most cause to be envious. Their ladies were entertained by those of the empress while they stayed there. The emperor meantime was in his hall conversing with the soldan and his companions of the battle between Dramuziando and Framustante, and of other things, with as little appearance of hatred as though there had been none between them, nor reason for any. It now being late, they requested permission to return: the day seeming short to Targiana in comparison of the time which she would have wished to pass with those ladies, of whom she took her leave with many tears, embracing them one by one, and acquitting herself of this war, which had been undertaken against her intreaties. They all accompanied her out into the place before the palace, where the farewell was given with

o many tears, that there was neither room or words nor compliments; some, however, rere shown to Armenia; for as they knew her ot, and therefore had no friendship for her, here was neither love nor sorrow to take lace of these forms. The emperor accomanied them to the city gates, where he took ave of all, and of Targiana last of all. nd when she would then have excused erself touching the war, saying how much was against her wishes, he interrupted her, ying, Lady Targiana, nothing grieveth e so much as that I am now of an age not o be able to requite you for your true and anifest good-will. As for the rest, things f this nature are so doubtful, that only at he end can it be told who gains and who ses. I am so confident in the reason and stice of my own cause, and in the little hich Albayzar hath for destroying my couny, that I expect this will decide all things ghtfully. Do you, Lady, think of this ouse to make use of it as your own; as for l else I know not yet whom you will have ost need to lament for. With that they rted. The emperor was carried back to

his palace, and Targiana was conducted to the camp, accompanied with the emperor Vernao, the kings of England, France, and Spain, and all the knights of the emperor's court, who having brought her to the camp, took their leave and returned to the city, talking of the nobleness of Targiana and the beauty of Armenia; and some of them, as the Turks had done, devising severally among themselves, to whose lot they should fall; for it is oftentimes the nature of soldiers to share and divide the spoil among themselves, before fortune hath delivered it into their hands.

CHAPTER 165.

t many days after the arrival of the ncess Targiana, the princes, as well on one side as on the other, concluded to n in battle. The Christians were more irous thereof than the Turks, because the tuals began to wax scant within the city; ides, Albayzar came oftentimes, and pro-ked them also with his standard and en-ns displayed, which urged the people to r and call to their commanders and cap-ns, to suffer them to sally forth of the y; for it was a grief to them to be so en-sed within, and to see their enemies come ring them so boldly without: all with one ice cried out for leave to attack them, en peradventure they might make them

lose some of their confidence. If Primaleon had had his will, it would have been seen before now by whose courage the issue was to be decided; but, as ye have heard, many of those allies who had come from distant parts were weak and sickly with travelling on the seas, especially the emperor Vernao's people, who were the last that arrived; therefore they determined to recover themselves in perfect assurance of their health, before they would thrust themselves into the face of danger.

After they had well rested and recovered themselves, and found that they were strong and able to deal with the enemy, and all were eager for it: one Sunday in the month of April, the day being clear and bright and fit for so signal a thing, after mass they drew out their banners through two of the city gates, and the captains began to put their men in battle array with great stir and joyfulness. Don Duardos, as general of the whole, allotted each his post, and divided the horse into six battles. The first was conducted by the soldan Belagriz, to whom was committed five thousand good soldiers, being

all his own subjects. The second was given in charge to Recindos king of Spain, who had the conduct of three thousand, two of which were they who came from Spain. The third was led by Arnedos king of France, who had the charge of the like number as the king of Spain had, including the two thousand that were sent him from France. The fourth was under the conduct of Polendos king of Thessaly, who had the like number. The fifth was in the charge of the emperor Vernao of Allemaign, being as many. And the sixth and last, being four thousand, was conducted by Don Duardos.

. . . .

Primaleon would not this day take upon him any charge, that he might the better give succour to those places where he perceived most danger; he therefore remained among the knights-adventurers, who were these: Belcar; duke Drapos, of Normandy; Mayortes, the Great Khan; Palmerin of England; Florian of the Desert; Florendos; Platir; Blandidon; Beroldo, prince of Spain; Floraman of Sardinia; Graciano of France; Don Rosuel; Belisarte; Onistaldo; Tene-

Rostram de la Brunela; Dramuzian
mourol; and all the most renowned
of the emperor's court. All these t
post at the onset in the van of th
Belagriz's battle; all concluding wi
selves, that so soon as the battle s
begun, they would each of them
on that side, where their duty and
did best serve them.

In the city there only remained kin
with a few knights for its guard.
footmen fifty thousand were station
rear, to support the horse, the other
ing for the defence of the city. D

eds passed, which might be an occasion stir them up more nobly, in defence of e flower of all Christendom. With these id other such like speeches, he did so aniate and embolden all his train, as they that ere the most fearful, and had least mind deal with their enemies, seemed as wilng and forward to the battle as he that as the bravest soldier in the field: in fine, l thought that in him the victory was cerin. Having seen to every thing, like a ood commander, he withdrew to his own ost, commanding the soldan Belagriz to ive the first assault.

lbayzar ordered his army with no less skill nd prudence. He divided his horse into en battles, giving to each five thousand. he first was conducted by the soldan of ersia, who was accompanied with the great iant Framustante, and about five hundred nights-adventurers, besides the five thouand, all persons of great name and not less rowess. The second was given in charge the king of Trebisond. The third to the ing of Caspia. The fourth to the king of

Armenia. The fifth to the king of Bamba. The sixth to the king of Parthia. The seventh to the king of Bythinia. The eighth to prince Arjelao of Arfasia. The ninth to the king of Etolia. The last was conducted by the soldan Albayzar himself, with whom were the seven giants for the guard of his person, all except Framustante; for when he espied Dramuziando in the forefront of the Christians' army, being desirous to approve himself against him only, he went, by the licence of Albayzar, to the foremost squadron of the Turks. The foot were divided into four bodies to support the horse; each body contained five-and-twenty thousand; and they that were left beside, horse as well as foot, remained in the camp, for safeguard of Targiana and the princess Armenia, and of the tents and stores of the army.

As for the richness of the armour, and ingenious devices which these knights, as well on the one side as the other, bare in this conflict, albeit that to make a true and sufficient discourse thereof would be impossible, nevertheless, to yield the greater content-

ment to those who take delight in reading of this famous history, I will make record of some, whom wholly to pretermit would be a fault, especially in so notable a battle.

Beginning then with the Christians, who advanced by twos and by threes, I say that Don Duardos, the emperor Vernao, and the soldan Belagriz, had their armour of white and black, with bars of gold, strong and splendid withal, and in their shields they bare a black Griffon in a field sable, carrying in his beak, written in letters of gold, the names of such as each esteemed to be his best beloved.

Primaleon and king Polendos were in white armour without any adornment, and in their shields was pourtrayed, in a silver field, a cloven Rock, which device Primaleon was wont to bear when he was amorous of the princess Gridonia his wife. Recindos and Arnedos bore arms suitable to their years, of grey and murrey checquers, Lions rampant in their shields, in a grey field. King Estrelante, and Belcar his uncle, were in ar-

a golden Tree in a field sable.

Palmerin of England and Florendos
green armour, studded with little fl
gold, and in their shields was figu
tune lying on her face, whereby wa
stood, that they did not repose th
in her.

King Floraman of Sardinia, and th
of the Savage Man, had their armo
Indian colour, all wrought over w
shrubs of gold, more gay than it mi
been thought beseemed the manne
raman's life; the devices of their shi

with birds of silver, and in their shields was pictured in a field vert, Love, holding a knight underneath his feet: for this device Miraguarda commanded Dragonalte to carry all his life-time, when he was vanquished before her by Florendos at the castle of Almourol.

Prince Beroldo, and Onistaldo his brother, were both in gilt armour spotted with black, and in their shields were flames of gold, in a field of sable. Polinardo and Francian had their armour of green and carnation colours in stripes, and in their shields was displayed a silver sea, in a field vert. Blandidon and Frisol were in black and yellow armour, the colour being wedge-shaped, carrying for their devices in their shields, two black Griffons, studded with roses of gold, in a yellow field. Pompides and Platir were in green armour of hope, and each of them carried in his shield a silver Bull in a field vert; for Pompides took great delight in this device.

The armour of prince Graciano, and that of Gearim his brother, was of green and white,

vermilion, and in their shields they
dead Hope, in a bloody field, as r
needed hope no longer.

Don Rosuel and Dramiante were
white armour, beset with roses of go
helmets fastened with laces of the sa
in their shields was pictured a white
a golden field.

Basiliardo and Dirdem, the sons of M
were in grey, wrought over with litt
shrubs, and in the same manner w
shields. Tenebror and Germam of
wore no bravery, only what they we

gundy, having nothing to hope, was the more willing to keep him company; and therefore they carried for their devices in their shields, sable Sadness in a yellow field. Daliarte of the Dark Valley, and Don Rosiram de la Brunda, were in white armour without any adornment. Daliarte had the figure of god Apollo in his shield, in a field vert, which he was always wont to bear; and Don Rosiram had in a field gules, the Tower of Nimrod, from whom he was lineally descended. Mayortes the Grand Khan, and the giant Almourol, were in black armour and strong, without any finery, and their shields of the same colour, without any manner of device, garnished with iron, and fit for the nonce.

Dramuziando appeared alone upon a powerful horse of iron-grey, armed in plates of steel which were right strong; his shield was of steel, and had moreover steel rims, which made it the stronger; and as he was of great stature, and wore such strong armour, and was moreover greatly beloved, the people eyed him with great affection, and had much hope in him.

This was the fashion in which the kings, princes, and knights of the emperor went forth; many others were there which were worthy to be put in remembrance, and if I let them pass, it is to avoid prolixity.

Albayzar, soldan of Babylon and heir to the Turk's dominions, and commander general of the field, came forth upon a right good horse which the king of Media had sent him, and which he had reserved for this day; he was armed in green, the token of hope, as surely expecting victory; in his shield he bore an image wrought of gold in a field vert, made to the likeness of Targiana, from the breast upward, adorned with much jewelry, and more fit to be looked at and carefully preserved, than exposed in battle. His aventayle was open, and being by nature a goodly and gentle personage, he seemed worthy of so great a charge.

The soldan of Persia was in armour of green and white, the colours being divided by borders of gold and jewelry, in the shape of a P, that being the first letter of the name of Poli-

narda, towards whom he was marvellous affectionate, and whom he expected to have for the spoils of this victory; in his shield was figured contented Hope, in a green vesture, like a damsel, and round about the rim of his shield was written in letters of gold the name of Polinarda. The king of Caspia was in tawny armour, circulated over in divers places with black, in sign that he had been vanquished in the combat past; and in his shield he bore for his device, an Ounce, having his claws all bloody, in a field of sable; whereby he gave them to understand, that he had good hope to bathe his hands in the blood of his enemies. The king of Trebisond was in red armour, all over figured with little silver birds, having their wings spread abroad, in manner as they were flying; he carried the picture of Mars in his shield, in a field azure, and according to the manner in which that God was represented in old times. The king of Parthia, unlike the rest, was in white armour, bright and shining, but without any mixture, and in his shield was pourtrayed a Lion torn in pieces, in a white field, because he had torn

a lion himself, when he was in his youth
time. The king of Etolia was in armour
sinople and murrey, colours of little gaie
and not far unlike, without any borderin
and in his shield a black Bull, in a field
gules. The king of Armenia was in gr
armour wrought all over with roses of gol
and in his shield was figured a Phœnix in
grey field: whereby his meaning was, th
his lady was the only phœnix of beauty
the world, to whom no other might equ
herself. The king of Bamba was in gilt a
mour, with his basses of silver, and in h
shield was pictured a golden Lion in a silv
field. The king of Bythinia was in gre
armour, cross streaked with bands of silve
coupling in manner of knots; and in h
shield he carried a Tyger of beaten gold: tl
rim of his shield was fastened with jewels
great cost. Prince Arjelao of Arfasia h
his armour like to the king of Bythinia, bei
his friend and comrade. Many other
Albayzar's knights came into the field brave
armed; but I let them pass, inasmuch as th
being on the enemies side, such clear info
mation concerning them could not be ha

as for them to be truly described. Framustante and the other seven giants were armed in bright and strong armour, polished and thick, without any mixture of colours; and being of such huge stature that they far overtopped all others in the army, and their harnesses and helmets flashing over the field far away, as the sun shone on them, they struck great fear into the minds of their enemies, especially of those who had not been accustomed to stand against such monsters; and consequently they gave to those on their own side great confidence of victory and vengeance.

CHAPTER 166.

The armies on either side being appointed in good and fitting manner, the potentates, kings, princes, and persons of most authority, would needs go place themselves in the foremost rank, holding this opinion, that in such a renowned battle, and of so great peril, they alone which presented themselves the foremost in fight should deserve honour. Some kings therefore whose bodies were to advance in order, left the command to others, that they might place themselves in the face of the battle.

All being in order, and all in readiness for the charge; with the greatest and signallest and terriblest uproar in the world, the trumpets sounding on either side, they charged

dan of Persia's battle, and many were able encounters there given. Primaicountered the king of Caspia, and iis lance so bravely on him, as himself c both his stirrups, but the king of had such a forcible stroke, that being l through shield and armour, he was the earth, with a slight wound in the

Palmerin of England served the f Etolia in the same manner, albeit reputed amongst the Turks for an il good knight at arms. Florendos e king of Armenia failed in the joust, ey met so forcibly together with their , as both they and their horses tumbled ground; they were speedily holpen, ie Turk was so amazed with his fall, e was not able to rise; whereupon two cousins, who were appointed to guard son, carried him out of the field. Beand Floraman addressed themselves to Arjelao and the king of Bythinia, and itered with them so furiously, as they ll cast forth of their saddles, being not oon to mount themselves again, be- the number was so great, and the

fight so hot where they were. Recindos and Arnedos, who were also in the front of the battle, ran against the kings of Bamba and Parthia, and they were all unhorsed except king Recindos, who kept his horse valiantly. The soldan Belagriz and the king of Trebisond met together, and brake their lances bravely, not being any thing shaken in the encounter, and past on.

The soldan of Persia, who thought himself the best of his own side, had no sooner espied the knight of the Savage Man, but he gave his horse the spurs, and encountered with him full nobly; but they did not come off equally from that encounter. He of the Savage lost one of his stirrups, which he recovered again presently; but the soldan was so sore shaken as he lay along on the neck of his horse, and if he had not been immediately succoured, he might there have met his end, or have been fain to be carried out of the field, like the king of Armenia.

But of all these first encounters, that which was most eyed, and which was the most not-

ble, was that of Dramuziando and Framu-
tante; for as they hated each other, and
ach desired to display what there was in
im, they ran at each other with all their
orce, and failing at their lances, met in such
anner together with their bodies, like two
owers, that both horses and men were sent
o the ground; and recovering themselves
imbly again, they began on foot a furious
nd cruel combat. The other knights
harged also each his enemy; but they are
ot here particularized, to avoid tediousness,
nd also because the names of their anta-
onists are not known; suffice it to say, that
or the most part the Christians remained
ith the honour of this first encounter, in
hich all the princes of the emperor's court
ere engaged, except Don Duardos, the
mperor Veruao, and king Polendos, who,
greatly as they desired it, would not depart
from their charge, fearing lest their men
would disperse themselves out of order. The
giant Almourol kept them company likewise,
because he saw no more giants in the fore-
most rank except Framustante, and as Dra-

muziando was engaged to him, he ch
remain with Don Duardos.

After they had thus encountered with
lances, and many knights thrown to the
some slain outright, and other some in
better case; they drew their swords on al
and began the most cruel battle tha
was seen; and the captains returned
to their several charges, because they
not have them fall out of order. A
and the king of Bythinia, fighting o
against Floraman and Beroldo, wer
coured by the soldan of Persia, who
noble captain pranced among the ra
animate and encourage the minds
friends, and assembling them in sundry
panies, he came where these four con
the fight still fiercely; but the soldan
griz, with his train, shewed such prow
the fresh comers, as within a while bo
soldan of Persia himself, and the co
he brought with him, were enforced t
them place against their wills, leaving
lao and the king of Bythinia in such d

had not the king of Trebisond come on them with the second battle, they had en slain by the hands of Floraman and roldo. The soldan of Persia, who gained at honour that day, seeing his men so out heart, that neither by force nor persuasions ild he keep them to, cried out to the king Trebisond to charge: which he did with h force, that by his aid he returned to re- rer what was lost, and at length made the ans to get Arjelao, and the king of Bythi- , thorow the press.

that had then seen Primaleon at that hour, ght plainly have discerned that he fought e the principal in this great war; for his ord and armour being all bathed in blood, laid on load so on every side, and followed on his enemies with his train so nobly, as t one durst stand before him to endure his ry: by this means he recovered horse ain to Floraman and Beroldo; but they ere so wounded, as they were fain to retire hile from the battle. Then with the aid Palmerin of England, and Florian of the esert, he held the king of Trebisond's battle

so hot play, that no more ground was
than had been at the second charge.
on the left hand of this squadron was
brunt of the battle, where Framustante
Dramuziando were fighting on foot;
Dramuziando having broken his sword g
pled with his enemy: upon this each
coured their own party; above an hund
knights on both sides alighted, for Fra
stante was greatly esteemed by Albay
and Dramuziando well beloved by all,
he would have been a great loss.. Primal
perceiving this, called to Palmerin and s
Now is the time when your prowess must
medy this great urgency; let us go succ
Dramuziando, for with a sorry heart shou
return into the city without him. Cer
Sir, replied Palmerin, the want of his per
would be such, that did we lose him, I sh
regard all other good hope as lost. W
that forcing their way together through
press, in spite of all resistance, they m
way up to Dramuziando, where they fo
on foot, the knight of the Savage Man,
rendos, Platir, Polinardo, Pompides,
liarte, Mayortes, Frisol, Blandidon, Bel

sons, with more than twenty knights,
n the like manner to his help; and on
ıer side the soldan of Persia, who
zed himself in all danger, and the
f Trebisond, and above a hundred
ı of great valour, they being all on

eon, though he was now of an age
:eded repose, had a heart in him which
ıot endure to be away from his friends
hey were in danger. When he saw his
without their horses he alighted like-
ınd so did Palmerin, who alway ac-
nied him, as being his lady's father.
ırew all the army into confusion; for
he other Christian knights heard that
eon fought on foot, they thought it
:mly to continue on horseback. The
vas done on the other side, because
dan of Persia had alighted to succour
stante. Truly, the feats and chivalry
were then displayed might well put in
fulness all actions of past times, how
r soever of fame and eternal remem-
:. Dramuziando and Framustante still

closing together, laid upon each o
with the pummels of their swords, but
were so sore travailed, as their strokes c
but little hurt them. Dramuziando see
to have the better wind of the two, f
this virtue of being unfatiguable he was
to be gifted above all others. Primaleon
the king of Trebisond buckled together
such was the press that crowded upon
that they were forced asunder. The
happened to Palmerin of England an
soldan of Persia. The knight of the Sa
Man slew two doughty knights, who
striking at Dramuziando and Flore
behind. The others were not so idle
that they began to win ground upon
enemies; and among them the good
Mayortes the Grand Khan, had thrust
ward so far into the thick of the Turks, c
wonders, that he was surrounded by t
and none of his friends could help him
at length, being covered with wounds
fighting to the last like a right good kn
he fell dead.

He of the Savage, who was the first tha

his way to him, not being able to bear a sight of such great sorrow, began to work new wonders. When the news of the death of the Grand Khan* was known, there was not a person who was not marvellously sorrowful, for he was a rare prince and excellent captain, and moreover of such conversation as might well be the occasion of great pain to those who had lost him. But as the one in whom this grief made the most impression was Dridem his son, he with ex-

---

* This Gran Can is so interesting a personage in the history of Primaleon, or rather of Don Duardos, that if the reader were versed in that true history,

He could not chuse but shed a tear
A tear for good Mayortes.

"And now I dare say that Mayortes there thou liest that were never matched of none earthly dogs might; and thou wert the curtiest dog that ever bare collar; and thou wert the truest dog to thy master that ever followed horse; and thou wert the truest lover of a sinful dog that ever loved man; and thou wert the kindest dog that ever struck stroke with fore-paw; and thou wert the goodliest person of a dog that ever came among company of knights; and thou wert the meekest dog and the gentlest that ever eate in hall among ladies; and thou wert the sternest dog to thy morta foe, that ever took Lion by the throat!"

treme anguish of mind cast himself amongst his enemies, and within a while he behaved himself so well, slaying and smiting away without thought of death or fear of it, so as the Turks knew to their cost his extreme griet for the death of his father: till at length, worn out either with toil, or anguish, to see his father covered with blood and wounds, he fell beside him, and gave up the ghost also. Great griet and exceeding and of long endurance was this to Don Duardos.

And because he judged, that fighting thus on foot would be the cause of many disasters, he commanded all the battles to charge, whereby he succoured his people, in such sort as all his friends were mounted on horseback again, and Dramuziando and Framustante were separated asunder, which Albayzar also had ordered. This was not done before the king of Trebisond was slain, by the hand of Palmerin. Dramuziando and Framustante were in such condition that they did not return to the fight, but were borne away, the one to the Turks' tents and the other to the city, to be tendered with present

ırd, according as their dangerous estates iired. The general charge being thus e, divers that had entered with the first le, retired to take breathing: but Pri- :on, Palmerin, nor any of that cast, were iem: for it seemed as if they were not ı to feel weariness.

frusching of arms and the splintering of .ds and the breaking of lances sounded ır and with such a din, that it seemed as e whole human race were being there then destroyed; the yells of the barba- ; pierced the skies, and the groans of the nded and the dying sounded so dolefully ıe ears of their friends, that none could them without being moved to com- ion and tears.

empress and all her household seeing great battle, and so great cruelty, and re- ıbering what was adventured in it, shut ıselves up in her apartment, where they ınted in such grievous manner, as if they seen the enemy entered into the city. cry spread through the whole city, and

many matrons and dames of great rank, t
ing their hair and their faces, went cr
aloud through the streets, till they cam
the palace, where in short time a great c
pany of them were assembled together,
they thought their true help and safety la
the aged emperor.

King Tarnaes would have denied them
trance into the palace, but it was more
he could well do: for hardly can the c
mon people be restrained, especially w
a general fear of their lives is threat
before their eyes.

The emperor himself, whose debility in y
deprived him of his wonted good judgm
could not bear up against this, accordin
his custom, but resisted these terrors
a womanly spirit, rather than the invin
mind he had alway borne heretofore.
giana, Armenia, and all the ladies of
Turks' camp, heard the uproar of the b
with the same dismay.

All order was now at an end, and they

were to guard the several princes were so forced apart by the press of fight, that each could think only of guarding himself. Don Duardos, being fresh, and desiring to witness his noble valour in the field, dismounted three knights one after another with one lance: afterward drawing his sword, he charged the enemies on all sides about him so valiantly, as they were glad to avoid and give him place. And Albayzar likewise, seeking to honour himself this day with the renown of the field, came upon the Christians with incredible prowess: none among all the host of the Turks was more eyed, for the great feats which he atchieved. Were all the great feats to be related which every knight performed that day, it would be to begin a relation which would be endless; the battle endured a long time bloody and cruel, but so equal that a man could not judge which side had the most advantage.

But as the force of the enemies' numbers began now to be felt, and seven giants came in fresh among them, the Christians were enforced to retire. The giant Almourol,

who had all this while kept company with king Recindos his lord, seeing that one of the giants, called Dramoran, was coming against him with a mace charged with many spikes, the throng making way as he came, stept forward before the king. Recindos willing to requite his loyalty with the like aid, as he had ever been wont to do, seeing another giant coming in aid of Dramoran, his heart never being used to refuse any danger, he advanced and met him in his courage. Recindos was now an old man, weary, and out of the custom of such dangers, and succour failing him, the blows of Trafamor, as this giant was called, came on him with such force, that the edge of his sword piercing through to his very entrails, he fell at his feet, thus giving that end to his life which he had alway desired for it. At this point of time the great Palmerin of England came up, weary and worn with what he had done that day, and covered with blood, his own as well as his enemies'; he seeing the great disaster which had befallen, attacked Trafamor. Some time they fought, none coming near to separate them, till in fine

Trasamor paid for the death of Recindos, and Palmerin was left in such state that he was forced to leave the battle; and by the commandment of Primaleon, he was carried into the city, where he fainted while his wounds were drest, by reason he had lost such abundance of his blood.

Almourol and Dramoran were sundered. The death of Recindos king of Spain was presently blazed through the army; which was such heavy news to Arnedos king of France, his cousin, and singular good friend, that making no account of his life, as one who did not desire to live longer, he threw himself amongst the thickest of his enemies, where seeking to revenge the death of the king of Spain, he fell covered with wounds, and by him Onistaldo, son to king Recindos, who in great agony of mind followed Arnedos, to revenge his father's death and seek his own.

The exceeding great sorrow which Primaleon, Don Duardos, and the other princes resented at these deaths, so overpowered their hearts,

that they ran amongst the thickest of their enemies, and laid on load like desperate men, nor could thing which they did now yield them any contentment: the knight of the Savage Man, on whose shield no manner of device could be discerned, it was so hacked and broken in pieces, came unto the giant Dramoran, who already bore good marks from Almourol's hands, and handled him in such knightly order, that he satisfied his wrath upon him, and slew him; but he himself was not so little punished as to be able to do more that day.

Belcar and king Polendos, who were not they that had done least in this battle, having advanced farther than help could follow them, were surrounded by more than a hundred of the king of Etolia's knights, and were in the end, having made valiant slaughter among them, enforced to pay the sharp tribute which death demandeth of nature. Such grief did the bruit of these deaths carry with it, that all now fought like men who cared not for their own lives. At this time prince Beroldo of Spain returning to the battle,

heard that Recindos his father, and Onistaldo his brother, were slain; at this heavy grief, being bereft of his judgment, like a brute creature without discourse of reason, he rushed among the thickest of the enemy, working wonders among them, and aiming to reach the place where his father lay, and there die beside him and his brother, that he might not endure this insupportable sorrow.

Floraman followed close after him, butchering the Turks on every side; and as Beroldo was dearly loved by many, many laboured to be with him in that danger, and they followed him with such good will, that it seemed now as if all the labour of the day had no whit abated of their strength. Among them all he that made the greatest display of prowess was Florendos, who had now neither armour nor shield, the strokes of the enemy having demolished all, and he had many wounds; but the sorrow which he resented for these deaths suffered him not to feel other pain. Certes, this battle may be reputed for the most cruel and perilous, and this day the

most dolorous, that ever nature appointed; for besides so many deaths of famous princes and renowned knights, another sorrowful and unwonted spectacle arose; for there you might have seen Don Rosuel and Belisarte break through the press of their enemies, without either fear or regard of their own lives, calling out for their noble father prince Belcar; and Francian on the other side for his father, king Polendos. Every one then, they being such personages and so near allied to the emperor, followed after them, to see to their succour.

Beroldo at length came to the place where his father lay slain; there he found Almourol: that true and loyal giant had lost his helmet, his hair was hanging loose about his bloody face, his eyes were full of tears, and tears and blood were streaming down his cheeks together, and the whole countenance of the man was so terrible, that it struck fear into any one. He had taken his sword in both hands, and was fighting right valiantly, and crying aloud for sorrow the while; seven or eight knights had he laid dead at his feet,

and there in that place was he resolved that his own body should be laid lifeless also, in token of the great faith and love and loyalty which he had ever borne to his master king Recindos. And though he was now at the last extremity, for he had many deadly wounds, yet his strong anger upheld him. Prince Beroldo still forcing on upon the enemy, did not meet with such slender resistance that he could have made way further; and if at that time the emperor Vernao, Primaleon, Florendos, and Blandidon, had not come to his succour, his heart would then have found its desire, which was to die beside his father. Primaleon laboured all he could to get the giant Almourol forth of the battle, because he was without a helmet, his armour broken very much, and his body wounded in many places; but his faithful brutishness was accompanied with such constancy, that he was not to be persuaded. The enemies now began to bear hitherwards, for the soldan of Persia, who some time since had left the battle, having now recovered strength, entered the field anew

with refreshed troops, and hearing of the feats of Almourol, betook himself there. Whoso had then seen the gallant behaviour of Primaleon and Florendos his son, in defending Almourol from the enemies' fury, he having his head unarmed, would have imagined the very type of knightly valour to consist in these two. A sorrowful thing it was to see Almourol determined to seek his own death, and not be able to persuade him from that mind.

With these fresh troops came the giant Gromato, a giant of surpassing force, who breaking through the enemy came up to Almourol, whom all the rest feared; but the brave Florendos stept forward to protect his old friend; and certes, there Florendos had come to his end, sorely handled as he was, and all his armour having been demolished, if Almourol had not sprung on and grappled with Gromato, before he could deliver one blow. Then the press thickened on both sides, each party striving to succour their champion. In fine, Almourol died in Gromato's hands, upon whom Beroldo laid

ch load of blows, that he also died at the
me time.

ow began the courage of the Christians to
crease worthily, in that they were stronger
that place than the Turks; for the soldan
Persia was conveyed forth of the battle,
reason of a wound that he had received
the throat: so that the soldan Belagriz
und good opportunity to carry the bodies
king Recindos and Onistaldo his son
rth of the field: Beroldo followed, because
mself had lost so much blood, as he could
antly hold out any longer.

rimaleon neglected nothing: with his
rength he fought, and with his eyes he
atched; and now he saw, on the other part
the field where Don Duardos was fighting,
at the Christians were driven to the retire,
r that Albayzar, accompanied with three
ants and a number of knights, seeing them
re travailed, came upon them with a fresh
arge: Don Duardos met his proud enemy
ith such puissance, as for awhile to main-
in the field, his sons Pompides and Dali-

arte aiding him, and Platir, who with his armour all hewn in pieces, still presented himself to the chiefest danger, and Vasiliardo, Frisol, Germam of Orleans, Luymanes of Burgundy, Roramonte, Albanis of Frisa, Dragonalte, Don Rosiram de la Brunda, Tremoran, Tenebror, Don Rosuel, Belisarte, and divers other knights; but they were all now so foredone with weariness and many wounds, that maugre all their endeavour, Albayzar began greatly to gain ground.

Primaleon then left the soldan Belagriz and Blandidon to take charge of the field in his own part, and went with Florendos and Floraman to the aid of Don Duardos: but on the way he found his brother-in-law the emperor Vernao, with Polinardo his brother, surrounded by the Turks, and in sore peril: for the king of Bythinia had slain the emperor's horse, which falling to the ground, brake one of his master's legs in the fall; and he kneeling upon the other knee, was still fighting valiantly, and Polinardo who was on foot defended him so bravely, that his courage was now the life of his brother. A

sorrowful sight it was to behold the emperor in this sad condition, who was so rare a prince and such a worthy knight. Primaleon, struck to the soul with grief, began to feel that Constantinople's hour of ill fortune was arrived, and in spite of his great courage and strong heart, he could not chuse but weep aloud; and as one who would far rather have died himself than beheld such deaths, he made at the enemies, and laid upon them such mighty blows, that none dared stand before him. Florendos and Floraman followed him, but not with equal force, for Florendos, as ye have heard, had neither shield nor armour, and could scarcely support himself, so greatly was he overlaboured.

Floraman settled himself against the king of Bythinia, and held a terrible combat with him; in fine, the king of Bythinia lost his life, and Primaleon seeing Floraman to be sore hurt, desired him to withdraw himself out of the battle.

When the Turks that were conducted by the

king of Bythinia, saw their captain slain, they began to retire, by which means Primaleon recovered and mounted Polinardo on horseback again: but the emperor Vernao was in such state that it was not possible to carry him out of the field; and this gave occasion to risk the total destruction of all. For the king of Armenia came upon them with four thousand men, and this great supply speedily recovering the ground which the Turks had lost, Primaleon was fain to alight from his horse, for the defence of his brother-in law, and in like manner did more than two hundred knights, many of whom there ended their lives like good and true friends, among which were Ascarol, Lisbanel, Brandamor, Radiarte, Bramarim, Argonalte, Rujeraldo, Almadar, and Altaris, most of them being Spaniards, whom the loss of their king made careless of life. They did not however sell their lives so cheaply but that the king of Armenia, with more than five hundred of his people, perished also. Howbeit all the resistance which was made for the emperor Vernao could not avail, and

ıere he also took his death. Then was he ıken from the field and carried into the city, here all was misery and lamentations.

)on Duardos now engaging Albayzar, dealt ·ith him so manfully, that Pompides, Platir, nd the others, had time to breathe, and then hey beat back the enemy. Albayzar had ıeen lost, if the giants who always accom-ıanied him had not saved him. At this time, or it was now late, the trumpets on both ıides sounded a retreat, and the armies sepa-rated. Whoso had then seen Don Duardos, would have thought him well deserving of the great command he held; for he withdrew his army with as much coolness, and provid-ed for every thing with the same thought and carefulness, as if he had not been labouring all that day, his armour the while being all in pieces and covered with blood, and he himself having many wounds. Belagriz and Primaleon assisted him in ordering the re-treat, and after they were all placed in array the Christians betook themselves to the city, and the Turks returned to their camp.

CHAPTER 167.

After that the Christian and Pagan princes with their forces on either side separated, by the consent of Albayzar and Primaleon, the princes and knights that were slain in the battle were carried thence to be interred. Dragonalte king of Navarre, and Pompides, had it in charge to remove the dead on their side, which was done before the troops retreated, and then under their own banners, all retreated in order to the city. Far more dolorous did this retreat appear than the battle itself had done; for they carried with them the dead bodies of king Arnedos of France, (Vernao, Recindos, and Onistaldo, had already been borne in,) king Polendos, Belcar, Mayortes the Grand Khan, Dridem

is son, and the giant Almourol: and as hese were such great and excellent persons, nd their sons and kinsmen were there pre-ent, and had none now before them on whom to give vent to their sorrowful rage nd execute vengeance, it all discharged it-self in tears, they seeing their dead friends, whose friendship and conversation they had now for ever lost. The body of each prince was surrounded by his children and friends and vassals, who went weeping aloud, and telling of the great feats which they had in their lives atchieved; and then those recol-lections brought afresh to mind their own great loss, in that such excellent knights were taken from them; and they called upon them by their names, as if they could have an-swered, and perceiving how impossible a thing that was, brake out into louder cries and more dolorous lamentations, calling upon the whole world to join them in their sorrow. In this manner, when night had closed, they reached the city, where they found the em-press, accompanied with the queens of France and Spain, Gridonia her daughter-in-law, Basilia, empress of Alemaign, her daughter,

queen Flerida, Miraguarda, Polinarda, Lionarda of Thrace, Francelina, Cardiga the wife of Almourol, Arlanza the wife of Dramuziando, with all the other princesses and ladies whose dearest friends were in the field, bewailing over the bodies of the emperor Vernao, king Recindos of Spain, and Onistaldo his son. Most of these came out to meet them with their hair dishevelled, for they knew their unhappiness, and each enquired for that which most grieved her. When the queen of France and Francelina saw their husbands dead and mangled, and others their brothers and their sons covered with wounds and blood, it may well be believed that this was one of the most miserable things in the world: and as women in sudden passions have less endurance, and think every thing is to be expressed by tears and cries, they made their lamentation in such sort, that none could hear them without being moved to great compassion and joining in their cry. Some tore their hair, others their faces, not worthy of such handling. In others the force of grief was such, that falling down senseless, they were carried to their

hambers. Many dames and ladies broke hrough the ranks, enquiring with pitiful ries for their husbands, sons, and brothers, nd they who found them, found them in uch plight that they received them with ew pain and with poor hope of their re-overy. They who could learn no tidings would have gone wildly into the fields where they had died, and have died there also. Don Duardos with great difficulty prevented this. The empress of Allemaign and the queen of Spain embraced the bloody bodies of their husbands and bathed them with tears, and with the sleeves of their garments wiped their wounds, kissing them many times; long time did they thus employ themselves, and hardly could Primaleon and Don Duardos make them at last withdraw.

This evil occasioned worse; for most of the princes and knights were grievously wounded, and had lost much blood, and not being looked to in time, this delay was of great hurt to them, and some died in consequence, by reason that their wounds filled with wind, and their weakness waxing more, gave oc-

casion to many deaths. But when they were beginning to retire, no one could prevail on Cardiga, the wife of Almourol, to move; she held her husband in her arms, and with terrible howlings, and words full of grief, bewailed herself forlorn and wretched. There was not one of so hard heart, seeing her great misery, and remembering the manner of Almourol's death, who could tear her from the body; and at the request of Don Duardos, queen Flerida, though well nigh beside herself at the wounds of her husband and her sons, came to her and consoled her, and accompanied her till the first violence of her sorrow had had its course.

That same hour king Tarnaes saw to the interment of the dead, for to have delayed it would have been hurtful to the living, not allowing them to provide for what was most needful: the ceremonies of their obsequies were left for a more convenient season, when they might be such as beseemed the greatness of their persons. He gave order also for the cure of the wounded, and for keeping the city, which all that night was watch-

rith great cries and lamentations. The hty emperor Palmerin, in whose ears all misery sounded, was not now able to ure such sorrow, and nature so deserted ı, that he lost all his bodily strength, his bs utterly failing him, and losing all feel- . His senses also clean forsook him now, l as his hour was come, these being the t tokens thereof, his Bird (of whom men- ı is made in the chronicle of his feats*) d that night, uttering before its death the ee dolorous and fearful cries, according it had been foretold. And as all this hap- ıed during the night, and the night itself s dark and gloomy, it made it the more rful. When the morning came it brought joy with it, for they who had their hus- ıds and children in the city found them ne dead, others near to it. They whose ır ones had not returned, went upon the

---

almerin de Oliva, C. 131. This bird, which he had won n enchanted garden, was to die the same day as him- , and announce it by giving three such cries as it had e when it was caught.

walls and towers, looking over the field, which was covered with arms and dead bodies; and knowing that they whom they loved were among them, attempted to throw themselves off and accompany them.

Neither did the enemies pass happier time, for they had suffered like losses; many of their princes being slain, and three giants, in whom they had placed great confidence. The soldan of Persia was in the utmost danger, and the physicians with little hope of his life; Albayzar and many knights wounded, and more than fifteen thousand of their people dead in the field; of the Christians there were fewer slain, less than three thousand. There was no joyful thing in the whole Turkish camp. Targiana, desirous of the life of her husband rather than of victory, entreated him to return and abandon his enterprize, seeing how doubtful it was, and be contented with the death of so many and such great Christian princes. Armenia wept for her brother's life; all was fear and desperation. But as this thing was to go on to the end, Albayzar, after looking to the

:are of the wounded and burying the dead, ›y advice of the chiefs of his army, sent back Targiana and Armenia into their own countries, because that by their presence and womanish tears they weakened the hearts of those who saw them, and moreover were a hurt to the army, inasmuch as the part which needs remained for their protection, was thereby kept from the battle. This parting Targiana thought would be for ever, for so her heart foreboded. The princess Armenia had the same feeling, so that this was a new wretchedness, equal to any of the past. When they were out of the camp they turned their eyes to behold it once more, remembering how much they had left therein: then lifting them up towards Constantinople, an ill and gloomy aspect did they think that city presented, as if their destroyers were within its walls. These imaginations accompanied them till they lost sight of it, and then continued not long; for in women no sorrowful thought is of long continuance; no grief lasts so long, but that when the first force is spent, it is forthwith forgotten.

So much was there to do with the wounded, both in the city and in the enemies' camp, that for twenty days there was no renewal of battle, during which time the emperor Palmerin departed, being full of days, in the presence of the empress Polinarda, his wife and singular dear friend, with his daughters, his son, son-in-law, and grandchildren round about him, and many other princes, by whom he had been served and reverenced during his life, as if he had been their liege lord; thus it is that good and beneficent princes are served in life and regretted in death. Let there not be any doubt concerning this, because it doth not conform with what is written in the book* of the chronicle of his deeds, for the most ancient and authentic writers are agreed that his death took place in this manner, and at this time. The loss of his presence caused the more sorrow, inasmuch as it befel at such a season; for though by reason of his age, he could not

* More accurately with the book of Primaleon, where his death is differently related.

ith his strength defend the people, never-
eless it seemed as if they were supported
y the venerableness of his royal person; and
truth, till the last he had been honoured,
beyed, and reverenced as if he had been in
ll vigour of mind to govern and command.
is obsequies were performed with as much
nour as if time and fortune had allowed
isure to prepare them. On the day of this
neral ceremony, all Constantinople went
broad in black and mourning garments,
nd followed him to the place of burial;
nd all the banners and royal ensigns, and
ther rich and precious marks of royalty
hich were in the city, were carried into the
reat place opposite the palace, and rent in
ieces, and there they were set fire to and
onsumed to ashes; a notable thing this,
fter the manner of the old princes of the
entiles. Primaleon, in token of greater
rief, ordered all the battlements of the city
alls to be levelled even with the wall, and
overed the rest with black cloth. The em-
ress, against the will of many, accompanied
he body with her daughters and the other
rincesses, and all the dames and damsels

of the city followed them. Any one
judge what a lamentation there would
shall not speak of it, for there would
end of the relation. All the stately ec
in the city were pulled down. It may
be believed, that as this prince was for
and prowess the most excellent of all
times, so in the resentment of his
greater excesses were shown than foi
other. He was buried in the monast
Saint Clara, which he had built, and
sepulchre which he had made for hi
The empress, with the queens of Franc
Spain, and the wives of Polendos anc
car, and the empress of Allemaign, bei
widows, remained in the monastery, a
they who had determined to forsak
things of this world, devoted themsel
those of God.

CHAPTER 168.

The emperor Palmerin being dead, and his obsequies performed with imperial solemnity, and those of the emperor of Allemaign and of the other kings as well, it was not long before the second battle was fought. For so soon as the wounded were in condition for new dangers, they all longed to be at it, and they determined to take the field, since by the show which the enemy had for two or three days made, it seemed they were desirous of battle.

First of all they provided for the safeguard of the city, which was committed to the charge of king Tarnaes of Lacedemonia, and the sage Daliarte, with five hundred horse-

men, and four thousand foot-men; the rest of the Christians were divided into six several bands, as they had been in the first battle. The first was conducted by Primaleon, who had two thousand foot and five hundred horse. The second, being of the same number, was committed to king Floraman of Sardinia. The third to king Estrelaute of Hungary, being of the same number also. The fourth, of two thousand, to king Albanis of Frisa. The fifth, to Drapos duke of Normandy, being alike in number. The sixth was under the charge of Don Duardos, and comprized all the rest of the army. The soldan Belagriz with his train, had the charge to give aid where he saw need required.

A notable thing it was, and worthy of admiration, to behold the manner in which these knights departed from the city towards the field. They were all in black armour, in token of the grief with which they resented the death of the emperor and of the other princes, and their shields of the same colour, without any devices, a thing which not only

made a show of sorrow, but also created sorrow in the hearts of those who bare such mourning, and of those who beheld it. And that there might be nothing among them but what should bear testimony of mourning, their horses were likewise trapped in black. Certes, sad hope was to be drawn from a display so sorrowful. And the more to express their inward heaviness, they would have neither drum nor trumpet with them, nor any kind of instrument used in war, to stir up the spirits of the soldiers, and to rejoice them. They sought that day for every thing which could make show of sadness, and rejected all cheerful appearances, as things unnecessary and out of season for their resolve. These things occasioned sadness among themselves, and struck also a dismay into the enemy, when they saw the whole multitude as if already drest for the grave, with a sort of majestic and mortal dignity, all covered with black, a colour among all others held to be the most dolorous and meet for mourning, without one bright banner or gallant device, such as are wont to be displayed in such times, and on

such occasions. Their beavers were all closed, that nothing in any countenance might be discerned which was not in unison with their attire; and this made the spectacle more dolorous, and made it seem rather a ghostly than a human sight. They marched into the field without voice or sound, silently, so that the very silence made them seem not to be earthly. The footmen came after, attired in black likewise, and in like manner having laid aside all that was of chearful semblance. The hilts of their weapons were coloured black; they were without drums and fifes, which should have stirred their spirits, and modulated their steps; but silently and in perfect order followed their leaders. Well might it be understood, what unfeigned love and affection they bare to the emperor, and how they could not forget what gracious and friendly entertainment he was wont to make to his very enemies. A thing which all princes ought to have in regard, and in remembering the great virtue of this famous emperor, to govern their kingdoms in such sort, as the people may rather know what a grievous loss they have by the

death of such a prince, than to behave themselves in such manner as their subjects shall rejoice to be rid of their governor. The sight of their enemies in this array excited great admiration in the Turks, and much more than ever did they stand in fear of them, judging that they who came out to battle, so unlike living men, would fight like men that did not desire to continue such; and well believing that they who displayed so great resentment of the loss of their friends, would labour till death to take vengeance and to accompany them. Albayzar, in whose mind such thoughts were passing, knew the danger of his people, and the dismay which they felt; and began like a rare and courageous commander to chear and hearten them with chearful words, full of confidence, telling them that by what they saw of their enemies their hope of victory ought to be certain; for like men who knew that defeat must betide them, they came mourning already for their own destruction: and since the gods had given them this day of vengeance, which had been so long withheld, he bade them now avail themselves of favoura-

ble fortune, and aid it by their strength an courage, that for lack thereof they migl not lose the guerdon which fortune now pr sented. What did the mourning with whic the walls of Constantinople were hung si nify, but that the city already gives itse up as yielded into the hands of its co querors? And since it was in their hands t win all, or in their weakness to lose all, h bade them remember that those whom the saw before them were the same enemi with whom they had fought in the former ba tle, and whose strength they had tried, fa fewer in number than they then had been, an deprived of the help of all those excellen princes and captains who had then been slai Finally, he laid before them the renown o the victory, which should be the recom pence of all their travails, and a sufficien revenge for the death of their forefather who had lost their lives before the walls o Constantinople, and whose blood called ou for vengeance, and for atonement, there t be taken, before those walls and upon thos enemies.

When he had used these and such like speeches to them, they began to wax desirous of the battle; and chasing all their former fears out of remembrance, they marched on after the same manner as they did in the first battle, saving that they were under the charge of other captains, for that they which conducted them before were slain. The manner in which their horsemen advanced was also well worthy to be seen, and the great havock which had been made among them; for albeit they did not come forth with such sad show as they of Constantinople, yet was their display little splendid, there being no arms among them but what bore marks of their enemies' blows. All the bravery of their coat-armours was gone, they were broken in many places, and the colours stained and defaced; their helmets were bruised and battered, their corslets hacked and hewn, their shields of slighter resistance than seemed needful for such a day's work, and the devices thereof destroyed, without vestige of what they had been; the fury of their antagonists had demolished all. All

their armour was stained with blood, a pitiful thing to see, if any one could pity those who had been the authors of his misery. Certes, it might plainly be seen, that on the one side all was sorrow, and on the other blood and unhappiness, and the minds of all wrought up for farther evil.

The battles being arrayed, Primaleon on the part of the Christians took the van, accompanied, as knights-adventurers, by his son-in-law Palmerin, the knight of the Savage, Florendos, Platir, Pompides, Blandidon, Don Rosuel, Belisarte, Dragonalte, and all the young and famous knights of the court. The giant Dramuziando went with them, in whom more than in all the other the mournful harness which he wore made the most dolorous display.

On the enemies' side, the king of Etolia led the foremost battle, wherein was the most puissant knights in all the Turkish army, they being desirous to be in the onset. Among them was the giant Framustante, who de-

sired above all other things to encounter Dramuziando, because of the hatred which there was between them. But when they were about to charge on both sides, the Christians only waiting for the signal which the Turks would sound with their instruments, a thing befel which delayed them for more than two hours, contrary to the wishes of both armies.

The city of Constantinople, as you have heard before, was committed to the charge of king Tarnaes of Lacedemonia, and the sage Daliarte. Now it is written in the Chronicles of those times from which this history hath been taken, that this sage, who was learned in art magic, discovered by his art that the city of Constantinople would now be brought to its final destruction, and that Primaleon with all the rest of its defenders, and his own father, Don Duardos, would perish in that battle; and that though most of the Turks would come to the same end, and be slain also, yet some would be left, who should get possession of the city: though in this his art something deceived him.

And that these conquerors might not have at their mercy the honours, lives, and persons of so many rare princesses, high born ladies, and worthy dames, so lately married, and most of them now great with child, as also that the fruit which was to be expected from them might not be lost, he with his art and knowledge raised by virtue of enchantments a dark and obscure cloud, which shadowed the light of the firmament in such sort, as not only the city was so wrapt in the cloud, as it was not possible to discern it, but they in the field also were covered with this thick darkness, so that neither could they see each other, nor had they the power to break through it; and they remained in amazement awhile, not knowing what this might be. Meantime, he still using his art magic, gathered into this cloud the empress Polinarda with the other queens and ladies who had retired into the monastery of Saint Clara, and all the other princesses and ladies, they being all cast into a deep sleep, and in that manner he conveyed them that same day to the Perilous Island, which Palmerin had bestowed on him: and

he shadowed the Isle likewise, by his enchantment, in such manner, that it was never seen more till time and his pleasure gave occasion. These ladies were surprised with marvellous admiration, when they found themselves not in Constantinople, but in a strange land; and though it was a pleasant and delightsome land, and the palace wherein they were placed was great and sumptuous, yet they took possession of it with greater lamentations than they could have used in taking leave of Constantinople, had they known when they departed from it; and the sorrowful remembrances of what they had left there was a greater grief to them than any other loss; and well did they conceive that this transport of them which had thus been wrought, had not been done unless some great evil had happened. This made them more sorrowful. But as they will be spoken of in due season, the history returns to king Tarnaes at Constantinople, who, after the cloud was vanished away, and the day clear again, seeing that the empress and all the other ladies were gone, and Daliarte also, conceived such extreme fear within himself,

that what with that and the weakness of his body, he died suddenly. In the city there was now none to take upon himself the guard thereof, for all who were therein gave themselves up for lost: in the field that which fortune had ordained came to pass.

CHAPTER 169.

The dark cloud being gone out of sight, whither Daliarte guided it, the day began to wax clear again, and the armies could see each other drawn up ready for the charge. But as the Christians were about to give the onset, they heard a most lamentable and pitiful outcry, which made them stay their hands; and looking about to see the cause of this, they saw a great many women and damsels come forth of the city, with their hair dispersed abroad over their shoulders, and wringing their hands in very grievous manner. For they finding the city thus left desolate, with none therein for their succour and defence, came into the field, to their husbands, brethren, sons, and kinsmen; seeing they could promise to them-

selves no assurance in the city, they came to them to look for protection, and die with them in the field.

Don Duardos and Primaleon were so amazed at the clamour of these women, that they caused their ensigns to stay, and commanded the horsemen not to break their array, till they had understood the cause; greatly blaming the neglect of king Tarnaes and Daliarte: and they sent Pompides and Platir to bring them certain tidings. But when these two knights returned and told them after what manner king Tarnaes had died, and how the sage Daliarte was gone, no man could tell whither; they began to think within themselves, that both they and all their train were brought to such extremity, as fortune had concluded to finish the memory of their knightly deeds by delivering their lives to the sword of their enemies. They did likewise persuade themselves, that Daliarte absented himself for no other occasion, but only because he perceived their general destruction was at hand; and in this respect, they judged he had provided

some refuge for the empress and the ladies, that their enemies might not triumph in their misfortunes, to the greater misery of their lords and husbands. Whereupon they concluded by general determination, to withdraw themselves into the city to make provision for the defence thereof, before they would enter the battle with their enemies. For certes, it was a pitiful sight to behold, how the women and children came to look for protection among them, and how old men with grey heads and white beards, being so weak and feeble with age that they were fain to support themselves with their staves, desired that they might rather enter the battle, and there end their lives, than live to see this last succour perish, and then be miserably butchered with the women.

Great was the sorrow of Don Duardos, Primaleon, and all the other princes, finding the palace in such a desolate state, neither the empress, the princesses, nor any of the other ladies there; this vexed their minds with inexpressible grief. They went into their accustomed chambers, and not finding

them there to whom they were most affectionate, their very souls were ready to forsake their bodies; for the young princes enjoying their sweet ladies so short a time, for whose sakes they had suffered so many bitter brunts, they thought themselves not able to live, being deprived of their company, whom they honoured with most pure and unfeigned affection. And now their pains were greater than ever they had been before, and this mishap more grievous to them than all the dangers past, because their ladies were the rewards of their knightly victories; but having thus strangely lost them, they were out of hope to enjoy the sight of them any more, wherefore they seemed as men deprived of their senses, looking ghastly and fearfully one upon another, knowing not which way to comfort or redress their present heaviness.

In this case the Christian princes remained for the space of three days, without offering their enemies battle; during which time Primaleon made conveyance of the aged men, with the women and children, in the

night time, to divers of his castles and fortresses near adjoining; and then the city being rid of these embarrassments, grief passing into rage, he caused the walls of the city to be beaten flat to the ground, and all the sumptuous dwellings which stood within; which was thought good by the advice of every one to be so done, and that for two especial causes. The first, that it would more animate and embolden the Christians in the time of battle, seeing themselves despoiled of the place wherein they might else have reposed their assurance of safety. The other, that the enemies should not enjoy their pleasant and stately homes, neither vaunt how they had destroyed Constantinople, if so be fortune allotted them the victory.

This destruction of Constantinople availed also in another way: for the inhabitants of the city, seeing it so spoiled even to the very first foundation thereof, conceived such hatred against the Turks, as gave them new strength and courage, and they went out to battle more for hatred and the strong thirst of vengeance, than for any thought of vic-

tory. In this mood they took the field once more, being arrayed in the same order as before, and having increased the battles with all those soldiers who had then been left for the defence of the city.

Albayzar, whom the destruction of Constantinople had stricken with dismay, as knowing well the intent of his enemies therein, commanded his captains to place their men in array, bade the trumpets sound, and the king of Etolia to give the onset with the first division, which was under his command. Primaleon prepared himself to receive him, and giving his horse the spurs, he prevailed so fortunately in the encounter, that he made the king of Etolia measure his length on the ground; but he was quickly succoured by his men, and remounted. Palmerin of England ran against prince Arjelao, and met him with such puissance as his lance pierced clean through his body, so that he fell to the ground stark dead; the like did the knight of the Savage Man to a valiant knight named Ricardasso, who was esteemed a singular captain amongst the Turks: Florendos, Platir,

Graciano, Beroldo, and the other famous knights, encountered each with him whom fortune had opposed to him, and all had the vantage over their enemies. Of the others many were smote down on both sides. Framustante and Dramuziando failing in their encounter, passed by each other: and though the press was so great that they could not turn for another career, as they wished, yet the strong desire they had to pursue their battle to the end, and see who had the vantage, made them think of nothing else; so letting go their spears, because amid so great a throng they could not make use of them, they drew their swords and began their combat.

The Christians behaved themselves so worthily at this first encounter, that the king of Etolia, though his men were twice so many in number as they with Primaleon, and though he and many others did wonders in the van, being not able to endure the prowess of Primaleon, Palmerin, and the others, was fain to fall back upon the second battle, which was conducted by the king of Caspia.

He advanced with them, and charged so hotly as to bring many to the earth; Primaleon again arraying his men, resisted him so bravely, that he held the matter in suspense, not losing a foot of ground. Whoso had seen the great Palmerin of England at that hour, might well have seen that the remembrance of Polinarda was working in him, and that in the desire of seeing her once more he thought his single arm could overthrow the whole host of enemies. Florendos also, and he of the Savage, and prince Beroldo, and Graciano and the others, made such havock among them, that the field was dyed with the work of their hands. The great Primaleon, not being the one that gained least honour that day, did his endeavour so bravely, that the Turks for their last remedy were fain to charge with their third battle, of which the soldan of Persia was captain; and in sooth he had made a great slaughter of the Christians, if it had not been for Floraman, who came up to their support. Palmerin, who hated this soldan in his heart because of his proposal to marry his lady Polinarda, encountered him and bore him to

the ground. This brought the whole brunt of the battle that way; for the Turks laboured earnestly to mount the soldan again, and Primaleon to aid Floraman, who was likewise cast beside his horse. And by reason of the great eagerness of the Christians to help Floraman, they had forgotten Dramuziando, who in another part of the field was still battling with Framustante, both being now on foot, for their horses were no longer able to carry them. Both were wounded, though the wounds were nothing great, and both being wearied, fought with little vigour; nevertheless Dramuziando appeared to have the better wind. But this would little have availed him if he of the Savage had not come up, for Framustante, with the help of Grantor, a knight of great prowess, would now have slain him. Fortune however, who had reserved him for farther exploits, would so have it that the famous knight of the Savage, his great friend, came that way, and seeing him in that peril, brake way through the enemies, and came up to Grantor: and though he found stout resistance in him, laid on such heavy load of

blows, which so bewildered him that he could not help himself, till in fine he fell at his enemy's feet for pure weariness, and there expired, no succour being able to save him. By this time so many Turks flocked to that place, that both he and Dramuziando would have been in great danger, if king Estrelante of Hungary had not succoured them with the third battle. And then peradventure Framustante would have been slain, if Albayzar, who had alway his eyes upon him, had not ordered all the remaining battles to charge. Don Duardos seeing the peril of his friends, did the like. Then was there so great an uproar, as if the whole world were engaged in battle.

He of the Savage, being mounted, seeing Albayzar coming with his lance charged in his rest, took a spear, and gave his horse the spur, to meet him. Albayzar, who knew him by his shield, came against him, for they twain hated each other mortally on account of Targiana, which, as ye have heard heretofore, was the principal cause of the coming of the Turks to Constantin-

ople. Neither of them missed his encounter; Albayzar was fain to catch hold about the neck of his horse to shun the fall; but the other's horse was so weary with travail, that what with that and the force of the shock, he fell to the ground. He of the Savage, however, leapt out of the saddle quickly, so that he sustained no harm. Albayzar recovered his seat, and then with the help of his men endeavoured to surround him, and get him in the midst of them. But Dramuziando and the knight of the Savage, being both afoot, so bestirred themselves with their swords, smiting and slaying all before them, that none dared come nigh them; yet must they needs have perished, if the soldan Belagriz had not arrived there with four thousand horse, reserved to carry succour wherever it was most needed; and thrusting in upon the Turks with great puissance, they rescued Dramuziando, and brought him forth of the army to rest himself awhile; and they mounted Florian on horseback again, in spite of the enemy. Framustante also, on the other side, was removed from the field, because of the great need he had to take rest.

At this time, the greatest hurly-burly was where Primaleon commanded; for Palmerin was on foot, and grappling with the soldan of Persia, and Polinardo with Ferabroca; which caused the knights on all sides to hasten to this conflict. The king of Etolia, accompanied with five hundred knights on foot, came to help the soldan of Persia; but Beroldo, remembering the death of king Recindos his father, joined in fight with him. Don Duardos came thither to assist his friends, and so did Albayzar on the behalf of the soldan of Persia, bringing with him many knights; and four giants, who were fresh, entered the field, whose presence did much terrify the Christians, so that many of them durst not abide the fight with such monsters.

Yet could not all these knights and giants avail so much but that Palmerin of England by fine force of arms slew the soldan of Persia, making him yield up the ghost under his hands, he himself remaining in such condition that he was still able to show his strength elsewhere: whereat the Turks

were dismayed, for next to Albayzar he was the chief person in the army. The grief which they resented for his death greatly increased their rage. But the joy for this victory of Palmerin over the soldan was greatly abated by the death of Polinardo, who doing battle with Ferabroca, a knight of great account, and not being so well succoured as his antagonist, ended his life, covered with wounds; yet sold he it so dearly, that Ferabroca himself, and many others, bore him company. The death of Polinardo was a new grief to his friends and companions, in that the emperor Vernao his brother having been killed in the first battle, the empress Basilia, seeing her lord and husband gone, reposed all her hope and comfort on him. Florendos, whose grief could not be expressed for the death of his kinsman Polinardo, because they had been nourished all their youth together in the emperor's court, a thing which greatly increaseth friendship, to revenge the death of his dear friend and companion, ran fiercely amongst the thickest of his enemies. The first he met withal was the giant Pandolfo, who holding a mighty

mace in his hand, advanced himself against him. Then began a fierce and terrible combat between them, so that within a while, the giant Pandolfo railed and blasphemed against his gods horribly, that one knight should be able so long to withstand him, he being wont to vanquish every one that entered fight with him, by reason of his marvellous strength. Florendos supported himself in this combat more by his skill and activity than by any thing else. At this time the battle was so hot on all sides, that none could give eye to another, every one having enow to do in looking to himself. For this reason, Pandolfo being feebly seconded, Florendos got the better of him in such sort that he brought him down and slew him, he himself being so marked by his hands that he could scant support himself.

Beroldo of Spain, who was fighting hand to hand with the king of Etolia, demeaned himself so valiantly, that maugre all the resistance that king could make, he slew him there outright. But as Albayzar now came up with the force of a great multitude, nei-

ther Don Duardos, Primaleon, nor the other princes, could oppose resistance enough to have saved him from the fury of the enemy, but there he must have died, performing actions worthy of himself, and of the son of such a father, if the soldan Belagriz with his body of helpers had not come up; and they bore him out of the field, but in such condition that he seemed rather a dead man, than one that had any life left in him; and in this order he was brought to Pasencio, the emperor's chief chamberlain, who had the charge given him of the wounded persons, because he was very skilful therein, and being a man of great age, did not enter the fight. The opinion of prince Beroldo's death was such grief to his friends, as they rather desired to bear him company, than to live after such losses: for this renewed in them the remembrance of the death of king Recindos of Spain, his father, of the emperor Vernao, and the other princes, all which made victory so sad, that there was none who desired it; for though it should thus hardly be gained at last, ill could it be enjoyed when such dear friends were lost.

The knight of the Savage Man seeing the great slaughter that Albayzar made of his friends, pricked through to the place where he was, and came unto him with these words: Now is the time, Albayzar, which alloweth us the opportunity to satisfy our long desired revenge of each other; and because we two are the occasions of all this trouble, I pray let this quarrel be ended between thee and me, and let not those who are innocent in this matter lose their lives for our offences.

I am so glad, said Albayzar, to meet with thee, that I desire no other good and no other victory; and having once conquered thee, I care not how soon my own life be lost. With this bitter will on both sides they began mortally to smite at each other; this combat however did not endure long, for the giant Altropo came up in aid of Albayzar, and began to lay at him of the Savage with a mace, with the which he had done great hurt that day. Albayzar seeing them engaged, and that the Turks were losing ground in that part of the field where Don Duardos fought, went to support them in person, as

he ever did where there was most need. With his coming they recovered their ground, for he was accompanied by excellent knights, and moreover his presence animated every thing. He of the Savage remained some while in battle with Altropo, and as he was somewhat weary with the great endeavours which he had made all that day, and remembered how needful it was that he should save himself for farther work, he availed himself of all his skill and slight, avoiding deliverly the blows of his enemy, till at last he laid him at his feet. Withal, he himself was left in such plight, that full willingly he would have gone forth of the battle to rest himself awhile, if the king of Parthia would have given him leave; who bringing succour to that part, came forth with a great body of knights, and compassed him round about. This was the hour in which he of the Savage displayed all his worth; for seeing that death surrounded him on all sides, he was resolved to sell his life at its full price. And in this desperation he fought in such a manner that none dared come nigh him, and they stood in such fear of him that they now attacked

him with missile weapons, meaning so to overpower him. Any one who had seen this knight in former times, and known his deeds and customs, and should now have beheld him in this state, ill could his heart have endured the sight, without shedding tears: for in him there was all valour and all strength, and all other graces and good manners which man could have: and no one who saw them thus about to perish, and him in the last extremity of life, would have desired to live himself, seeing him perish. The news reached Primaleon, who laying aside all other considerations, made that way with some few who followed him. Palmerin went with him: the labour of the day had not yet made him appear wearied; and now seeing his brother on foot, wounded in many places, compassed round about with enemies, and well nigh buried with weapons, he brake his way through them, like a man who was come to take vengeance. On the other side, many knights came up, and among them the giant Molearco, who was of terrible stature and marvellous strength. These so stiffly resisted the fury

of Primaleon, Palmerin, and the others, that before they could get him of the Savage out of the field, many were they on both sides who took their death. Then on the part of the Turks, the king of Parthia was slain, and Luymeno his son, and Antistio his brother, with many other notable knights; and of the Christians, Tenebror and Francian, which was great sorrow and great loss, they being excellent in arms, and of that royal lineage.

Now began the fight to be carried on with groans and sobs and dolorous lamentations; and these were the more increased in the part where Don Duardos fought, because it was said that they were killing Blandidon. When this news reached the soldan Belagriz his father, not able to endure the grievous passion which he resented, he entered the battle, crying out with a loud voice upon his son, for he had no other, and loved him passing well, as in truth his great prowess and chivalrous thewes deserved. So breaking way through the enemies in the force of this fury, without care or forethought, he came

to the place where his son was; and seeing him stretched on the field and covered with wounds, and that there was yet breath in him, he threw himself from his horse, meaning to die beside him. This was a lamentable thing; for Blandidon, whose senses had not yet wholly forsaken him, hearing the voice of the soldan his father, who was calling upon him in great anguish, opened his eyes a little, and strove to lift up his head to speak unto him; but his feebleness not permitting this, he laid himself down again, and in this state was borne off the field and delivered to Pasencio. Then was the soldan so utterly mastered by exceeding grief, seeing what his son had done, and thinking he was dead, that being full of this strong passion, he neither spake, nor had power to speak, and his heart was so overcharged, that giving him no time to breathe, it burst, and he died there-right: yet making such proof of his prowess, that he carried with him some of those with whom he combated. These tidings came to Primaleon and Don Duardos, and each resented it greatly, for in the soldan they lost a main pillar in this danger.

His people, like true and loyal friends and vassals, by fine force doing wonders in arms, and at the cost of their blood, won his body and carried it from the field, meaning to give it burial answerable to his rank. And leaving some few in guard of it, they returned to the fight, where fighting manfully, without fear, and to revenge the death of their lord, they did great deeds in arms, and finally died that day in company with the rest.

The great Palmerin of England seeing his brother carried out of the field, and not knowing in what state he was, being full of anger and abhorring life, did such things that he slew the giant Molearco, and still remained in condition to go forward; and so greatly did he signalize himself among the Christians, that it seemed as if he alone supported the whole weight of battle. At this time a great cry ran through the troops: it was for this cause, that Florendos and Platir were on foot and surrounded by the enemy, and Florendos fighting with the giant Pasistrato, and being succoured by Platir,

slew him. But Albayzar, who never failed that day wherever he was needed, repaired thither, and had brought them to such state, that if they had not by their surpassing hardihood borne up, they must then have ended their lives before Primaleon could have succoured them. With his help Florendos was remounted; Platir had a wound in one leg, so that he fought upon his knees, and by reason of this could not be holpen. Nevertheless, as he was so great a person and so excellent in arms, every one rejoiced to venture his own life for the sake of saving him, and by main strength he was carried away and delivered to Pasencio; but Germam of Orleans and Luymanes of Burgundy were left upon the field, both excellent good knights and of great rank: on the other part, the king of Bamba was slain with his two brethren; so that if the Christians fell, their enemies perished also. Primaleon, though these deaths struck him to the heart, bore up and mastered his grief with a manly heart, that all might not be lost; and making the others remount, turned again to order the battle.

And now on the part of the Christians the giant Dramuziando and he of the Savage came again into the field, being refreshed; and on the other part, Framustante and the king of Caspia. With the coming of these, and of many others who accompanied them on both sides, the battle was again renewed. The day past on, and mens strength was failing; for oftentimes when many knights withdrew from the fight to recover strength and take breath, they could not return, by reason of the blood which they had lost, and because they were so foredone with toil that they could not move, for which reason they fell down and died. The captains, though they well knew how profitable it would have been to sound retreat, fought in such loathing of life, that none of them wished to give himself any respite from death. The field began now to be so covered with dead, that the living stumbled over them and fell, and some were so weak that they could not rise, and thus died under the horses' feet, rather than by the hands of the enemy. Not only the common order of horsemen died in this manner, but even some of

the renowned ones; for on the Christians side duke Drapos of Normandy took his death, and king Dragonalte of Navarre, and Albanis of Frisa, king of Denmark; yet before they died they wrought great slaughter upon the Turks; for the king of Caspia was slain, and many signal knights with him. All was now in confusion; none cared either for himself or for others, all fighting with the wish of death.

There were now few horsemen in the field; the foot had not yet charged, having by order of the commanders remained entire for the support of the horse, if it should be needful; but their leaders seeing that the horse were now utterly broken, and that there was none to command, not being able to bear the sight of so great slaughter, by common consent charged with such a shock as showed the deadly mind which they bare. It was a marvellous thing to behold this onset; such was the rage and hatred on both sides, that there was no room for restraint nor caution, and in short time the field was drenched with human blood. This

battle being on foot, and none trying nor desiring to save his life, they were soon destroyed; and in this part the great superiority of number overpowered the valour of the fewer; for as the Turks were more than three times as many as the Christians, by force of weapons they slew them all. It was a notable thing, that among so many there was not one who sought to escape, nor took to flight; life was so hateful to them, that they desired to be rid of it, rather than endure so great sorrow. Few Turks survived this battle of the foot; for though they were so many more in number than the Christians, the victory cost them so dear, that they well nigh all perished. Some were left, but they were so wounded, and lost so much blood, that they died for lack of help,—and thus the foot were destroyed, not being able to afford any help to the horse.

The giant Framustante breaking through the Christians, met Dramuziando who was seeking him; and not contented now to wage battle with the sword, they grappled man to man, striving by main strength each to over-

throw the other. Hither then came succour on both sides; but as Florendos and Pompides had had their horses killed fighting in the other wing, and were now on foot, it was necessary to leave these giants, and carry aid to them; Albayzar, who also saw that it was needful to repair thither, went that way with those who always accompanied him,—but the greater part of that company had by this time been slain. Thus were Dramuziando and Framustante left to themselves, to carry on their battle at will to the end. A terrible battle it was, and of no long continuance; for as their armour was cut through in many places, the ruthless blows made way into the flesh. Dramuziando was greatly tormented with many deadly wounds, but Framustante with worse from his hand; and that giant knowing now that his death was nigh, and hoping not to leave any conqueror to boast of it, grappled with him anew; but Framustante being now the weaker, fell under him and yielded up the ghost in his hands. Dramuziando was left in such plight, that not being able to support himself he sate down upon the body

of Framustante. Some Christians defended him from the Turks who would else have slain him, and with this help he had time to take breath and return to the fight; but the condition in which he was, disabled him from making much exertion. At the news of Framustante's death a nephew of his came up with his comrades, and surrounded Dramuziando, to take vengeance upon him. Well did Dramuziando perceive that his hour was come, and he cast his eyes around, and saw none of his friends near him, for he desired to take leave of them, or at least of Don Duardos, and to let him see how he died: and so greatly did he love him and his sons, that to leave them gave him as great pain as death itself; and he wished also to commend his wife Arlanza to their care, and the fruit which should be born of her, for she was great with child. Finding none near him to whom he could say these things, he began in his despair to display new strength, laying on such mortal strokes that in short time he made much slaughter, and had a heap of dead before him; and the enemies were so dismayed, that they threw spears at

him from a distance, as if he had been a bull. Meantime an English knight carried word to Don Duardos of Dramuziando's state, and he hastened thither, and of all the miseries which he had seen, none had seemed to him so great as this. He beheld Dramuziando covered with wounds and blood, and at his feet Framustante lay dead, and a heap of other knights, and he was still doing wonders, and surrounded with so many enemies that none could succour him. But Don Duardos remembering his great virtue and courage, alighted and made way in, and placed himself at his side. Dramuziando seeing Don Duardos beside him, and the love with which he was ready to keep him company and die with him, his heart was overcome, and with tears, to which he was little accustomed, he besought him to save his own life, seeing that for him there was no remedy, and asked him to remember his wife Arlanza, and that which should be born of her, as the child of his true friend Dramuziando. Having said this, such weakness came over him that he sate down again upon Framustante. Don Duardos, unable to

bear this great sorrow, could not speak a word to comfort him for weeping; all he could do was to defend him, with the help of Roramonte, Don Rosiram de la Brunda, and others who had now come up. Dramuziando took off his helmet to take breath, and with the air recovered a little; but what did it avail—for the blood of his body was all spent, and he could not uphold himself; and in this short space of time he saw Roramonte and Don Rosiram fall before Don Duardos; and then resolving not to behold any greater evils, to which he could now afford no remedy, with the rage of death, neither putting on his helmet, nor remembering that it was off, he rushed again at the enemy. But Don Duardos, who could not bear to see him die, took him by force out of the press, and delivered him to Pasencio, whose virtue and good care gave life to many a one that day. Dramuziando fainted under his hands by reason of his great loss of blood.

Don Duardos judging him to be dead, thrust himself into the battle, where the knight of the Savage helped him to a horse; he seeing

his father in this state felt less the loss of Dramuziando. Incontinently they went to that part where Florendos and Pompides were fighting; on the way they found king Estrelante, pierced with mortal wounds, on foot, and with few companions, and so wearied with defending himself and slaughtering the enemy, that before they could come up to help him he fell among the Turks, dead. If I were to tell you the great grief which the death of every prince occasioned to his friends, another new history would be needed for each, and all would be taken up with tears and sorrow. From thence passing on through the battle they found Florendos remounted by the help of Palmerin of England, and of his father Primaleon, and also of prince Floraman, who that day performed such signal feats as if he had believed the victory over the enemies, and the future comfort of his own life had depended upon them. But Pompides fighting as he was ever wont to do, in that place where the Turks had surrounded him would have ended his days, if they had not borne him from the field, not without great difficulty. Primaleon, Don

Duardos, Palmerin of England, the knight of the Savage, and some other worthies, now thought less of fighting than of encouraging those who were left, who seemed to be supported only by their presence. Albayzar also did the same with the few in whom he had faith and confidence, for on his part all hope and pleasure were as much lost as on the other; they fought only to die, and only desired that their own lives might be paid for with those of the enemy. Then Albayzar called to mind the advice of Targiana, and the grief with which she had parted from him, and that mingled with the sad remembrance which he bore of her, and he was exceeding sorrowful.

At this hour there befel a thing full pitiful: they who by reason of their feebleness remained in the city, before they departed from it to the places which Primaleon had provided for their security, seeing the field heaped with dead, and the living fighting with such desperation that they wished to die also, began to lay hand on all things in the city, that if any of the enemies should be left

there might be no spoil for them; and piling them in the great place, set fire to them. Not content with this, they set fire to all the houses which had been left standing, so that in short time they were consumed to ashes. The smoke ascended to heaven, the roaring of the flame was heard afar off, and the crash of walls in their downfall, which had been built to stand for ever, was terrible. All this was done to the end that no guerdon or reward of victory might be left for the enemies. They who were in the battle seeing these flames and this desolation, and having their ears deafened by the earth-shaking fall of buildings, paused awhile from fight to look upon this great destruction; and then the wrath of the Christians being kindled afresh, they turned again to the conflict. A thing it was worthy to be seen and still more to be lamented, what most of these knights then did: for as they thought themselves devoted to death, and were fighting with that desire, they took leave of each other with many tears and groans, as men who had a long journey to go, the return from which was full doubtful. Don Duardos,

who was now an old man, and greatly wearied with what he had that day done, turned his eyes upon his sons Palmerin and Florian, calling to mind their prowess, and how near to their end they and their courage were; and with this the love of Flerida came upon him, and the grief with which she would be left, finding both father and sons gone; his heart could not bear these thoughts. He went after them to help them in their need, seeing that they alway sought the place of most danger. Primaleon had the like thoughts, and his hardy and invincible heart was in like manner overcome with sorrow at that hour; he remembered how much had been lost in that battle, how many princes and excellent knights; and among them he saw his son Platir borne from the field, dead, as he supposed, and Florendos, though still fighting, in little better plight; and unable to endure these things, he turned to battle, all bathed in tears; and hating life, thrust into the thickest of the press. There they slew his horse, and he did wonders on foot. The first who alighted to support him was

his son Florendos, and presently Palmerin, who of all the Christians was the one that made greatest havock among the enemy, for by his hand he slew two giants, besides other famous knights, succouring his friends, and saving them when in most danger, with great expence of his own blood. He and Florendos and Primaleon and Floraman began to smite and slay, none daring to keep the field against them. Albayzar came up, sorely handled and weary, but on a fresh horse, with which he easily made way. The knight of the Savage spurred against him; his horse was so foredone with toil that he could not longer carry him, and he grappled with Albayzar, and keeping fast hold, both came to the ground; Don Duardos alighted and helped his son, and all of Albayzar's side who were near crowded to his support. Here it appeared that all whom Fortune had spared as yet, were now to be consumed. He of the Savage, remembering that all this evil had arisen from him, and that Albayzar was the instrument, determined to see if he could bring him to the same state as he rest: and

letting go his hold, began anew to let drive at him. Albayzar with the same determination warded and struck; for he had the same invincible courage and deadly resolution with the which he had come thither, being still the same, save only in the grief he resented for the destruction of his people. None could now separate them, for all they who came up had enough to do to defend themselves. And being in this press, where the Turks could receive no farther succour, they were overpowered by the strength of the Christians, so that in short time they were all slain, and the field covered with their dead bodies. He of the Savage behaved himself so well in arms, that by fine force he brought Albayzar to the last extremity of life: in such sort did he battle with him, that no succour being of any avail, he laid him dead at his feet, and with him all the famous knights of the army had their end, among whom the feats of Albayzar were greater than those of any other, for by his valour he supported the battle: and well did he appear worthy of his great command,

defending himself and his friends and vassals, as long as his strength lasted; in fine, he died with them as their companion.

Albayzar being dead, such knights as were left neither forsook his body nor the field, as is wont to be the case in most battles, when the commanders are slain, but desiring to follow him in death as they had done in life, many of them attacked him of the Savage, who had now neither shield nor sound piece of armour upon his whole body, and what was worse, his strength so enfeebled that he could scant hold his sword; but the succour of those who now bore down every thing before them, arrived in time to help him, and they finally cleared the field. The knight of the Savage was carried off it and delivered to Pasencio, who received him as one dead. Don Duardos, not being able either with his courage or great discretion to endure this sight, lamented over him with words of sorrowful lamentation and womanish excess, like one who in that hour was beside himself, and called upon Flerida, as

if she could have brought any help in this great misery. Then rising with the last despair, and seeing as it were all the world dead, he longed to bear them company. Palmerin his son, who could as little bear to behold before his eyes this prodigious destruction, had the same desire; but Polinarda came to mind, and that thought made him somewhat satisfied with life that he might again see her and serve her; and then again remembering all that had chanced, he abandoned himself to despair as one who distrusted every thing. Florendos, Floraman, and Primaleon grieved also that there was none to slay them. Pasencio removed all the wounded which had been delivered into his care to a castle situated between the Turkish camp and the city, where he laboured all he could with chirurgeons who searched their wounds, and applied all needful remedies, that they should not perish for lack of help. But the wounded were so many, and the desire of life in them so little, that their despair well nigh did as much hurt as loss of blood.

Well may it be believed that this was the

most notable battle in the world, full of death and despair, in which both sides fought with equal hatred of life, a thing never seen in any other that hath at any time befallen. This was the end of Albayzar, nor is such an end to be wondered at, for cursed intentions for the most part bring on such issue. On the part of the Christians the victory was so dearly bought, and won with so little joy, that there was no stir whatever to spoil the tents, though the spoil was above all price. Not even the desire of gain, which at such times is wont to make cowards adventure themselves to great danger, had power enough to make any one lay hands on gold, jewelry, and other like things of great costliness and show. Every thing yielded to the present sorrowfulness, grief for the loss of their friends, and the desire of their wives and children, which among men puts all other things in forgetfulness.

The common hinds and boors of the country, who collected after this unhappy battle, came to ransack the Turks' tents; and because they had more knowledge of the gold than of the

infinite riches of the precious stones and jewels, they took their fill of the worst, leaving those things behind them of greater estimation: such being the brutishness of the people, in that they had no better knowledge.

CHAPTER 170.

When this unhappy victory was over neither party had much to boast of, for on the side of the Turks their whole force was consumed, and on that of the Christians many princes, chiefs, and famous knights; so that there was not kingdom, province, nor country in the whole world, to which this great evil did not extend, many being bereft of their kings, and others of a multitude of knights and people; for which cause there was no joy in any part, but all was misery, and trouble, and sadness. Wherever this news spread, the air was filled with cries and lamentations which reached to heaven, some bewailing the loss of their chiefs, others the death of their sons, kinsmen, and friends. The maids

nd matrons leaving their houses, went
rough the streets and public places, tear-
ig their hair and their faces, and lament-
ig loudly, all without order ; for in so great
isery what order could be observed? In
rance, Spain, and other kingdoms, the
hole business was to celebrate obsequies
fter the manner of the several countries.
1 the principal cities, the battlements of the
alls were covered with mourning and black
oths, and all the banners and royal ensigns
nt, that being a custom equally among
loors and Christians. On the day of the
attle, as soon as it was over, Pasencio, in
rder that the ill fortune of that day might
ot complete the destruction of all that were
ft, removed Primaleon, Don Duardos,
almerin, the knight of the Savage, Flora-
an, and others, ordering beds to be provid-
l for them, and such things as were needful
r their recovery, which seemed doubtful,
th by reason of their wounds, and of their
ttred of life. The second day after the
ttle, the peasantry being gathered together
r some who had most spirit among them,
ade something like the appearance of an

army, with which they took the field, spoiled the tents of the enemies, and slew some of the multitude who were not yet dead, hatred neither allowing them to show mercy, nor the enemy to ask it; and they came to guard the place where the wounded princes were, fearing that else they might by some ill fortune be destroyed.

On the third day Daliarte arrived, where finding that his art which had announced the total destruction of Constantinople and of all its defenders, had something deceived him, he was something contented to see that the principal ones still survived, who might yet restore all that was lost; but the contentment was not perfect while he saw their recovery so doubtful. Incontinently he examined their wounds himself. Most of the princes were in such condition that they did not know him.

Beroldo, Platir, and Dramuziando, were entirely bereft of their natural reason; Don Duardos and the knight of the Savage almost in the same state; Primaleon also well

nigh gone. Daliarte plainly perceived that their victory had been obtained over desperate men, which is never so cheap as to be won without loss on the conquerors' part. He saw also that the despair of these princes, and the remembrance of what they had lost, occasioned as much danger to their lives as the wounds themselves: and for this reason the first remedy which he applied was a certain ointment, the virtue whereof was such as to cast them into a deep sleep, and thereby take away the thought of what so grievously afflicted them.

On the fifth day Argentao, the governor of the Profound Isle, whom Daliarte had commanded to come, arrived in the port of Constantinople, with four gallies, hung with black: the people received him with new lamentations. Daliarte with the men of these gallies went to the field, where searching among the dead he found many Christian princes whom he wished to carry to his own island, and there give them burial, with those who were already in the city, Vernao, Arpedos, Recindos, Belagriz, and the others.

They could scarcely remove them for exceeding sorrow. And though the air had somewhat preserved them, and thereby somewhat kept off corruption, yet if Daliarte and his people had not come properly provided, they could not have borne it. Three days were they busied in this search, for among so great a multitude, the bodies were not easily found: and during this time, the women and old men whom Primaleon had sent from the city, came to the field to look for their husbands, and sons, and brothers, that they might give them burial. Such lamentation did they make over them when they found them, that Daliarte could not bear to hear it.

That same day another thing happened, which occasioned fresh dismay: six other gallies, covered with the same sad symbols as the others, entered the port, and finding the Christians' vessels, would have forced their way by battle. Daliarte prevented this, knowing that Targiana and the princess Armenia came in them, for the bodies of Albayzar and of the soldan of Persia. Having made themselves known, by consent of those

of the land, they landed with certain dames and damsels clad in black, and having every thing about them of the same colour. When Targiana found the body of Albayzar pierced with wounds, she threw herself upon it and held it in her arms, lamenting over it, not regarding the state of the body, by reason of the greatness of her love and grief. Armenia did the same to her brother the soldan of Persia. Targiana was well known in that land, and being generally well beloved for her good conditions, there was not one among the Christians who could refrain from tears, seeing her in such sorrow. Having embarked the bodies of Albayzar and the soldan, Targiana and Armenia went on board, and rowed away, invoking plagues and curses upon Constantinople. The bodies of these princes were embalmed and filled with precious spices which Targiana had brought with her. They arrived at a city which was a sea port, where the Great Turk received them, and made sumptuous obsequies; but these are not described, being the works of the enemies. Of Targiana it is written, that among other words which she exchanged with Daliarte,

she learnt from him that her friends were living and under his protection, and that she showed great desire to see them again, and bade him commend her to each of them separately; and then took her leave. Targiana remained a widow all the rest of her life, for the love which she had borne Albayzar was such, that she never would consent to marry again; so that neither the entreaties of her father while he lived availed any thing, nor of her vassals after his death, nor the force of certain neighbouring princes who wooed her, and for that reason made war upon her.

She had a daughter by Albayzar whom he named Alchediana after his mother, and at his death he left her great with a son, whom Targiana named Albayzar, in memory of his father. He was afterwards a mighty prince, and succeeded to the states of the Turk his Grandfather, and was moreover soldan of Babylon. He proved a valiant man, and famous in arms, a great innamorato, and something voluptuous, cruel, and a great enemy to the Christians, as one who had been bred

up in hatred of them, the death of his father being daily before his eyes; and he bore the like hatred against the sons of Palmerin and of the knight of the Savage, and the other princes. There were great wars and notable battles between them, as may be seen in the chronicle of the second Don Duardos, son of Palmerin of England.

Armenia the heiress of the Persian state, after the death of her brother, married by her vassals' choice a young prince, her kinsman, who was worthy of her and this great rank. She had sons by him, of whom the eldest was called Beliaazem, a warrior of singular prowess, and the great friend of the second Albayzar, whose sister, Alchediana, he married. They twain were alike in their will and deeds, and great feats are recorded of them in the Chronicles of England, such as well deserve to be held in remembrance, even though they were done by enemies.

CHAPTER 171.

Targiana and her gallies being departed, the sage Daliarte went into the city, and assembled together all the people that could be found. And as he now despaired of the lives of Primaleon and Florendos his son, for their wounds gave no good hope, he addressed the people, desiring them to take their loss as patiently as they could, and not to dismay themselves: but that they should provide for the re-edifying their city, not only to secure themselves from the danger of their enemies, but to witness to the world, that fortune had not the power to root out quite the name of the noble city of Constantinople, as she had subverted

the memory of so many other famous and renowned cities.

Beside, they should call home again those citizens, who, by reason of age and debility, had taken themselves to the near adjoining fortresses, and by a general voice chuse them a governor, for otherwise they should not contain themselves within bounds of assurance. And therefore, quoth he, chuse you a governor, lest peradventure the emperor Primaleon, and prince Florendos his son, should finish their lives by the hurts they have received in the battle, and the young prince Primaleon, son of Florendos, remain inheritor of the empire. But elect him for a certain time only, and at the expiration thereof chuse another, or re-elect the same if his deeds shall have been such as to deserve it. And this being the manner, no man will so demean himself as to lose so great a charge, and remain infamous, as having been found unworthy of it. After some time, when prince Primaleon shall be of sufficient age to take upon him the command, he shall come and assume the

sceptre of his estates. Let it not grieve you that he should be bred up away from you; this must be done for two reasons. First, because if his father and grandfather die he will be left destitute of friends and kinsmen, and any powerful vassal who should chuse to tyrannize over the land, might do with him what he pleased; as might the Turks also if they should return unto this city. The other reason is, that where he now is he will be bred up in all security, and in the company of other noble princes, with whom he shall exercise knightly arms, and learn the rules of discretion and virtue, wherewith it is necessary a prince should be adorned, and whereby he may be worthy to possess the name and dominion of his forefathers. Moreover, while others remember that they have their natural lord living who will one day come and look to their actions, they will live with such respect to this, that the people shall have less reason to complain. All this I pray you remember as the vassals and friends of your prince. And if, as I have said, it should please God that the emperor Primaleon should at this

time end his days, I will visit you whenever it is needful for the state of the country.

Much did they thank him for this advice, though they were not a little aggrieved, that there was no greater assurance of the emperor Primaleon's life: and after many times asking that they might have their prince, or see him, which he for good reasons denied, they requested of him, that he would tell them in what place he was nourished, that they might come sometimes to visit him as their lord and sovereign.

Neither may this be, replied Daliarte, till time permits: the place where your prince is nourished is the Perilous Isle, which some time belonged to the sage Urganda but at this time is mine, for that my brother Palmerin of England, who conquered it with his sword and great loss of his blood, bestowed it upon me.

There being now nothing more to say or do, he took the body of the old emperor which was embalmed and in the monastery

of Saint Clara, and in company with the other dead, put it on board a galley. Primaleon, Don Duardos, and their sons, Beroldo, Graciano, Floraman, and Blandidon, who were all lying as dead persons, being bereft of their senses by virtue of the ointment, were laid in another galley, where their wounds were visited very diligently as their great peril required.

Then the gallies departing from the city, the people began to lament exceedingly, thinking it a grievous thing that they might not possess even the bones of their princes. Daliarte sailing with wind at will, came within sight of the Perilous Isle, where so soon as the gallies were seen, tidings were carried to the empress Polinarda, and the other princesses, who went on foot to the port to meet them, feeling as little wearied as though the way had been shorter, and they accustomed to greater travail. But where the heart is concerned it is unweariable; for as ye have heard, when Palmerin won this island he found the way from the port so difficult, that he was fain to stop

many times, and rest himself. Daliarte came with such signs of sorrow, as renewed the memory of the past evils; there was no wind that day, the black sails were stretched out, and in the midst of each was death painted with a sepulchre behind him: the oars were black, and all the ropes and every thing else in the gallies of the same dolorous colour. They who were at the oars were in the same sad livery, and they came on rowing in silence, like spectres rather than men. When they came to land, and the empress Polinarda saw the body of the emperor Palmerin, her husband, taken out, overcome with grief and weakness, she fainted. Daliarte ordered all the biers to be landed on which the dead and the living were carried, with little difference between them: he having so ordered it for the greater security of their lives, of which however he had little hope. So being borne as gently as might be upon mens shoulders, they began their way. Behind the biers went the empress, accompanied with Gridonia, the empress of Allemaign, the queen of France, and Flerida her daugh-

ter, the queen of Spain, and the other queens and princesses, filling the air with shrieks and lamentations, and tearing their hair, in such excess of passion that none could prevent them: they who carried the biers were moved to such compassion that they could scant proceed. This grief was general in them; for though Flerida, Gridonia, Miraguarda, Lionarda, the princess Polinarda, and other of the princesses, were consoled with the assurance that there was still some hope of their husbands lives, yet grief and love, and what they saw before them, would not let them give credit to this, nor temper their passion, thinking that these words were only feigned consolations, necessary at such a time.

Having reached the place where the perron was, whereof ye have heard, and which was the half way, they who carried the biers halted to take rest, and then those ladies having time to satisfy their desire, each went to the bier whereon that which most grieved her was laid, and with tears washed the wounds and the blood with which some of them were still

overed, and covered them with their bright
nd beautiful tresses, and with the sleeve
f their garments wiped them, as if those
medies had brought some relief to their
fliction;—but this was not permitted to
lerida, nor to those whose husbands might
ave received hurt by being disturbed. And
om time to time they lifted up their faces,
hich were bathed in tears, one calling to
ie other, as if looking for consolation;—
at all stood in need of it, and none could
estow it on another: and in that despair
ey fell again upon the biers. Daliarte, when
e found that no words which he could
ie were of any effect to turn them from
eir intent, full of the same grief himself,
te himself down upon a stone, waiting
ll they should be weary of weeping, and
eir passion find an interval, and allow
em to proceed on their way. And there
inking on this great loss and great mi-
ery, and with what reason the death of so
any and such men might be lamented, his
eart could not bear it, and he threw himself
n his face upon the stone: for he could
ot bear to see Flerida tear her face, look-

ing up to heaven, and uttering shrieks which rang through the whole Isle, and clinging to the bier of Don Duardos and lamenting all their misfortunes, and accusing time and fortune that they had left her to so many miseries, and bereft her of all she held dear. Polinarda and the queen of Thrace, her daughter-in-law, accompanied her with the like lamentations. In another part, Gridonia and Miraguarda were bewailing in the same manner, and all the other queens, princesses, and ladies, for there was not one among them all who had not great part in this great destruction. Arlanza and Cardiga, the wives of Dramuziando and Almourol, filled the whole mountain with their dismal cries. Thus they continued till their passion abated from exhaustion, and Argentao found opportunity to bid the bearers proceed; for Daliarte was so overcome by the misery before his eyes, that he had no thought to do anything.

So they took up the biers and proceeded in the same order as before till they had reached the summit of the island. Great

is the prudence of Daliarte in making
ose who were not dead appear so, or else
was the disposition of fortune to prevent
rther ill, for had they come in their senses,
id seen this dolorous welcoming, their bo-
es lacking blood and strength, grief might
ive destroyed them. I may be excused
om relating all the delays which took place
id all the swoonings and manifestations of
rrow, for it is not well to fill up all with
isery: every one may conceive what would
e the state of these ladies, who had lost hus-
nds, sons, kingdoms and states, and were
ow in an island, without neighbourhood and
ithout hope of any good fortune. One con-
ntment only they felt amid their grief;
e love which they had borne their hus-
nds was so deeply rooted, that they re-
iced to remain with them even when dead.

ut it was the will of fortune that this should
ot be the chief remedy for many of them;
r after they had reached the castle, the
ead were carried to the temple and they
ho were not dead were looked to with such
ligence, that in few days they began to

show some hope of recovery. This certainty Daliarte kept to himself, not chusing to communicate it to those princesses, fearing that they would prevail by their importunity and visit their husbands, and thereby peradventure undo the work of the remedies. After some time longer, Primaleon was the first who recovered strength enough to be visited; then Palmerin of England, and the others afterwards. Dramuziando and the knight of the Savage often fell back into greater danger, and were longer recovering: but when they were all at length safe, joy then began to appear anew, and the clouds of sorrow to pass away. The dead, greatly as they were lamented, began, according to the course of nature, to be forgotten, and the recovery of the living was regarded with such joy, that none thought of the past. The empress, though she remembered her husband with whom she had seen so much greatness, so many triumphs, and such sovereign command, yet calling to mind the great age at which he had departed, which was not till he had become decrepid, healed this grief, as women heal all things, by

olding her son alive, and her daughters, her grandchildren; for with this most nen forget their husbands,—and many ı less than this.

CHAPTER THE LAST.

It is written in the General Chronicle of England, from which this history is taken, that though those ladies whose husbands and sons survived, put all past losses in forgetfulness, it was not so with these survivors; contrariwise the chronicle saith, that Don Duardos and Primaleon always resented such great sorrow for the death of their friends, that never after were they joyful, so long as they lived. The others being young men newly married, though they felt these misfortunes, nevertheless it was not with the same excess as these two, for the love of their wives, for whom they had laboured so long, whom they had obtained so lately, and loved so well, gave occasion to some con-

tentment and many pastimes. Joannes de Esbrec who composed the chronicle of those times, Jaymes Biut, and Anrico Frustro, (authentic writers,) affirm that Primaleon, Don Duardos, and all the others remained in the Island till the dead were interred, in which there was some delay; the reason was, that the sage Daliarte wished to build a new temple for this purpose, the which, with the help of Argentao, was in short time edified, and as sumptuously ornamented as beseemed the occasion. It had appurtenances of marvellous grandeur, which were made more leisurely; but that part which was first edified Daliarte called the Sepulchre of the Princes, by which name the Island was afterwards known. In the highest and most honourable place the emperor Palmerin was placed, being embalmed, seated upon a full rich seat, answerable to his dignity; his beard was long and white, and his appearance grave and affable, such as it was wont to be while he lived; on his right hand was the emperor Vernao his son in law: on his left Arnedos and Recindos kings of Spain and France; below them Estrelante

king of Hungary, Dragonalte of Navarre, Albanis of Frisa, Polinardo, Diapos of Normandy, and Belcar, and the others in like manner, according to their precedency: all these were placed in niches of the wall, and the emperor at the head thereof; with the giant Almourol behind him, holding his mace in his hands, as his guard. At the entrance of the gate, in a high and fitting situation, was the soldan Belagriz, between king Tarnaes his brother in law, and Mayortes the Grand Khan. Each of these princes and knights had his shield hung up above him, with the colours and devices which he had chiefly used in his life-time, and his name written on the rim thereof. Their obsequies were performed with all the solemnity and ceremony which was possible, and it may be believed, with notable grief.

This being finished the princes resolved to go in person and visit their kingdoms and lordships, where their vassals expected them, being now certified of their recovery; for *Daliarte*, to prevent tumults and dissentions

had this notified every where. Daliarte made them a speech full of good advice and pregnant reasons, touching the manner which they ought to observe in the government of their kingdoms; and requesting them moreover, since those princesses whom they had newly married, some had brought children with them when they arrived at the island, others had arrived great with child, and had now childed, that they would think it good to let their sons be brought up there, to the end that afterwards, what with the remembrance of their breeding up, and the love which they would thus feel, they might ever after continue in the same friendship as their fathers, and each with the favour of his friends safely and peaceably possess his dominions. Moreover, he would labour to train them in all good and virtuous thewes, beseeming their persons. There were consultations among these princes before they replied to Daliarte: they who asked the advice of their wives, being overcome by their tears, could ill consent to be separa te from the company of their children; in fine however, being convinced by the autho-

rity of Daliarte, and the great profit which must needs result to those who should be brought up by so wise a man, they consented to leave their children in the Island under his care, till they were of age to bear arms. They say that Miraguarda, when she came from Constantinople, brought a son with her who was called Primaleon, like his grandfather, and came pregnant with Gridonia. The empress Basilia had two sons; the one was called Trineo, the second Vernao, after his father, being born after his death. Of Clarisia, the wife of Graciano, Arnedos was born: of Onistaldo, the wife of Beroldo, Recindos: Belcar left the second Belcar, and Francian left Polendos, who was king of Thessaly. Palmerin, surnamed of Lacedemonia, was born of Platir and Sidela; of Armisia and Pompides, Doriel, who after his father's death reigned in Scotland. Of Leonida and Frisol, Drapos king of Normandy: of Arnalta a daughter, who was called Floranda: Germam of Orleans left Ardiman of France, who proved an excellent knight. The great Palmerin begat the second Don Duardos, who afterwards reign-

ed in England; as brave as his father, and as great an innamorato, but less fortunate in love, as is shown in the chronicle of his feats. Joannes de Esbrec affirms, that after Palmerin and Polinarda left the Island and returned to England with his father and mother, they had a daughter whom they called Flerida. Jaymes de Biut and Anrico Frustro speak only of the second Don Duardos, who was left in the Island: it seems that Joannes de Esbrec is the more accurate, he being of the greatest authority in all these things. And in the chronicle of the second Don Duardos, which proceedeth from this and is not yet translated, much mention is made of this Flerida. Of the knight of the Savage and the queen of Thrace, Vasperaldo was born; who also was left in the Island, and was like his father in arms, and in love a little more constant. Tornelo, a Macedonian author, says that after some years they had a daughter named Carmelia, after her mother's grandmother, whose beauty was so admirable as to occasion some envy in Valeriza of Spain, and in Flerida her cousin, from which many ad-

ventures, or misadventures arose, which are treated of at large in the chronicle of the second Don Duardos, he having been her servant, and little favoured by her. Of Almourol and Cardiga the second Almourol was born, to whom his mother gave that name, by reason of the love she bare his father, and that the son was born after his death. From Dramuziando and Arlanza, Pavorante the Strong, who remained in the Island; afterwards they had a daughter named Lastriza, who married the second Almourol. All these princes, who were born in the Island, remained in it, and were brought up under the discipline of Daliarte, till they were of an age to receive knighthood, when he knighted some of them with his own hand.

The empress Polinarda, the empress Basilia, and the queens of France and Spain, and Thessaly, and all the other princesses and ladies whose husbands were buried there, abode in that island all the days of their life, for they would not return to their kingdoms, where they could not longer enjoy that con-

tentment with which they had formerly possessed them: only Arnalta queen of Navarre, taking her daughter with her, went to her own dominions, and this daughter afterwards, by reason of her great beauty, was sued to by many. Cardiga the wife of Almourol, by Beroldo's desire, returned to Spain, where she possessed the castles of Almourol and Cardiga, which were so called from her and her husband. To Dramuziando the island was given which had been his wife's father's: he making such terms with Argentao, as fully contented him. Selviam, Armelo, and Roborante, remained in the Island, to be fosterers of these young princes, under Daliarte's direction; each one had especial charge of the one that most concerned him; but Almourol was commended to their joint care, he seeming to be the most destitute of all.

When Primaleon, Don Duardos, and the other princes left the Isle, their departure was not taken without tears, which renewed the remembrance of former sorrows. On reaching their kingdoms some of them had much to do in putting them in order. Primaleon

had most to do in re-building Constantinople. He was received by his vassals as one sent from heaven; but at his entrance he would permit no feasts nor public rejoicings.

In process of time his court recovered all its greatness, and was frequented, as in old times, with knights both of that and of other countries; but after Valeriza in Spain, Carmelia in Thrace, and Flerida in England, began to astonish the world with their beauty, then things were changed, and in each of these kingdoms there was a great court. At one time all came to visit the emperor Primaleon in Constantinople, whereby the greatness and majesty of that court was made to exceed whatever it had been before; but then so many disasters and adventures succeeded, that Palmerin of England, Florendos, he of the Savage, and all the others of their time, returned to seek adventures with as much danger of their persons as in the days of their youth. Their sons, when they left the Island of the Sepulchre of Princes, and were knighted, some of them by Daliarte's hand, they astonished the world

with their exploits. The second Don Duardos was the flower of them all: whoso is curious to see the prowess of these knights, let him read the chronicle of this Don Duardos, and in it he shall see novelties and wonders, which he may also see in the chronicles of Palmerin of England and of the knight of the Savage; of Pompides, and of king Floraman of Sardinia; and of the second Albayzar, son of Albayzar the great soldan of Babylon, who died in this great war, the history whereof ye have heard; and of Beliaazem soldan of Persia; for their feats dismayed the whole world. In these books also would be found many memorable things of the great sage Daliarte, who going about to succour his friends and kinsmen with his industry, skill, and valour, being an old man, was slain with many wounds upon a bridge in Ireland, for which cause nothing more is related of those queens and princesses who remained in the Island of the Sepulchre of Princes; for whenever he left it he enchanted it in such manner that it became invisible, and at his death he had no time to disenchant it, wherefore it is believed that it is at this day

in the state in which he left it. This would be a notable thing to see, if any one in our time should by his knowledge be able to disenchant it, and see if the emperor Palmerin de Oliva be still there, with the other kings, princes, and knights, who were there deposited after the manner which ye have heard, and the queens and princesses also who remained alive, accompanying the empress, who may well be envied; for friendship so rare, and actions so famous, are worthy of great praise, and to be greatly envied.

THE END.

W. Pople, Printer,
32, Old Bowell Court, Strand.

ERRORS.

Vol. I.

Page 52, Line 16, for *Detred* read *Ditreo*
54, —— 11, for *Belzagri* read *Belagriz*
60, —— 9, strike out *who*
227, —— 19, strike out *eternal commendation*
234, —— 4, for *to* read *of*
253, —— 4, for *hollow* read *hollows*
269, last line, for *ought not* read *ought now*
303, Note, line 4, for *vassa* read *vasso*
329, line 20, for *Their* read *These*
345, —— 18, for *he* read *he*
384, last line, for *found* read *feared*

Vol. II.

Page 65, Line 6, for *where* read *whose*
76, —— 10, for *resist* read *resent*
132, —— 9, for *as that* read *as in that*
209, —— 19, after *seeth you*, strike out the comma
307, —— 11, for *had carkanet* read *had a carkanet*
344, —— 21, for *city* read *the city*
408, last line, for *this* read *thee*,

Vol. III.

Page 26, Line 12, strike out *which*
63, —— 7, for *ever* read *even*

WORKS BY ROBERT SOUTHEY.

1. Joan of Arc, in two Vols. Third Edition. Price 12s.

2. Poems, Vol. I. Fifth Edition. Price 5s. 6d.

——— Vol. II. Third Edition. Price 5s. 6d.

3. Thalaba the Destroyer, 2 Vols. Price 14s.

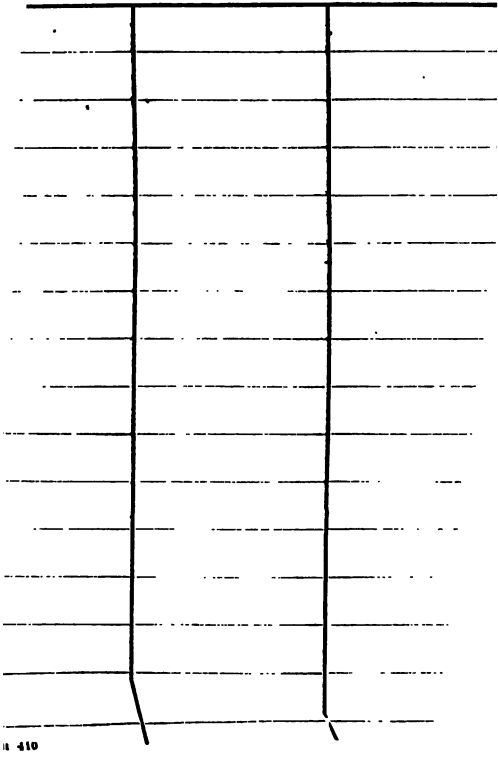
4. Amadis of Gaul, 4 Vols. Price 1l. 1s.

5. Metrical Tales. Price 5s. 6d.

6. Specimens of the Later English Poets, 3 Vols. Price 1l. 11s. 6d.

In the Press,

The Chronicle of the Cid, Rodrigo Diaz de Bivar, from the Spanish, with an historical Introduction, Notes, &c.

E NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

book is under no circumstances to be
taken from the Building